

Featuring: The Wiki, File Galleries, Comments, Articles & Submissions, Image Galleries, Banners, Dynamic Content System, Blogs, Categories, RSS feeds, Forums, Polls, Communications center, FAQs, Games, HTML pages, Quizzes, Site Stats, Chatrooms, Surveys, Trackers, Newsletters, Webmail, User Messages, Link Directory, User Files, Notepad, Ephemerides, Theme Control Center, Wiki Syntax Plugins, User Calendar and more...

Tiki v1.6

"Tau Ceti"



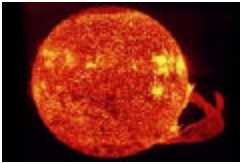
Documentation and User Manual

This page intentionally left blank

What is Tiki?

Tiki is a Content Management System (CMS) that can be used to create all sorts of Web applications, Sites, Portals, Intranets and Extranets. Tiki is specially used as a web based collaboration tool. Tiki is a multi-purpose package with a lot of native options and sections that you can enable/disable as you need them. Tiki is designed to be international, clean and extensible.

About this version



This is version 1.6 codename: Tau Ceti

Many new features added in this new version. Wiki structures were added to create structures of Wiki pages that can be used to create TOCs (Tables of contents) and indexes, this is specially useful for documentation or related-pages. A lot of user-level functions were added in the MyTiki section, inter-user messages, a newsreader, user notepad, user personal files, user tasks and a calendar among others. Admins can broadcast messages to all the users in the site. A link directory feature was added, you can add and classify links in categories that can be browsed by your users. Users can suggest links to be validated and added by admins. Other features include the ephemerides, inter-wiki links, new plugins, theme control center and many new preferences and settings. Of course a lot of bugs have been fixed.

Please help us by testing the application and reporting bugs/errors/features and suggestions to the development team. The home page of Tiki where you can find downloads, report bugs or request features is <http://tikiwiki.sourceforge.net/> . And you are also invited to join our mailing list at tikiwiki-devel@lists.sourceforge.net or tikiwiki-users@lists.sourceforge.net

Tiki versions are named after popular stars: While carrying no proper name, and not overwhelmingly obvious, Tau Ceti marks itself by its extreme closeness to the [Sun](#). A mere 11.9 light years away, the star ranks either as the 29th closest to us (counting all the stars in a double or multiple system) or 19th (counting double or multiple systems as single units). Tau Ceti is a G8V spectral-class star, the same type as the Sun and as the Sun it doesn't have a known companion. If Tau Ceti had a planetary system some planets may have had conditions favorable for life at a distance similar to the distance between the Sun and Venus. A star so similar to the Sun without a companion and very close to our system has always intrigued and fascinated many astronomers. In the sky Tau Ceti is visible to the naked eye as a faint 5th magnitude star being the only star smaller than the Sun that can be seen without a telescope.

New features in version 1.6

- Wiki structures added. You can organize wiki pages in “structures” and pages belonging to a structure will show a navigation bar to the next-prev page in the structure. A {toc} tag was added to display a table of contents for the current structure (in the first page of the structure for example)
- Directory added. A link directory was added, you can classify links in categories and let the user browser the categories or find links using a search engine. Users can suggest links that may need to be validated by an admin.
- Permissions levels added, you can set-up the “level” of each permission and then you can assign all “level x” permissions to a specific group. This can be used to quickly setup group permissions using “packs” of permissions around a level.
- Inter-user messages. Users of a Tiki site can send messages to other users and receive messages, privacy settings added as well as options to flag messages, mark them, reply, etc. Admin can broadcast messages to all the users in the site. A module to display ‘new messages’ was added.
- Contac-us module. A module where the user can contact the admin using the ineternal messaging system (if enabled) or an email.
- Who's online module. A module diplsyng the names of the registered users that are online.
- Permissions interface improved. Permissions are now assigned/removed using checkboxes, you can now assign/remove many permissions in one post.
- Mail-In feature added for the Wiki. An email account can be configured to manipulate wiki pages. Several account types supported. Users can receive wiki pages by email, update pages by email or append text to wiki pages sending emails to the configured accounts.
- Remember-me feature added to the login box (if enabled) the lifetime of the cookie used to “remember” the user can be configured.
- New themes added: tceti,elegant,whitebluegray,bluegreen and others
- You can now view the source of any version in the page history listing and remove many versions of a page using checkboxes.
- Inter-Wiki links were added admin can setup sites that can be used as external wikis and then the syntax ((WikiName:PageName)) can be used to link to external pages in other wikis.
- Optionally admin can implement user-level locks of pages, when activated users with permission to lock pages can lock pages and only the user who locked a page or an admin can unlock it. The user who locked the page is displayed as a tooltip of the locked page icon.
- Handlers can be defined by the user to run some custom PHP functions before parsing wiki pages or after parsing.

- A mini calendar was added users can enter events and view the calendar as a list of events, as a weekly calendar or as a daily calendar. Reminders can be used to notify the user before an event occurs. Calendars can be imported/exported to/from Outlook.
- A theme can now redefine any Tiki template, if a theme is found in `templates/$theme` then that template is used, if not the template in `templates/` is used.
- As an alternative Wiki table rows can now be separated by a new line instead of `||` making the table syntax more readable
- Users can add personal items to the application menu, as an option top-level bookmarks can be automatically added to the menu.
- User notepad added, users can write notes or upload notes, read them and download them.
- Newsreader added, users can read news from any NNTP site.
- New wiki plugins added see the Wiki plugins section in this manual for information.
- Wiki page footnotes added, a footnote can contain user-level comments about the page. The footnote is only displayed to the user that created it.
- Plugins are now re-entrant and recursive. Plugins can be nested and plugins can generate other plugins code or wiki markup code.
- Wiki structures can be used to generate slide shows.
- User tasks added, including a module that can be used to enter new tasks display active tasks and remove tasks or mark them as done.
- Theme control center added: when activated admin can make sections, categories or individual objects use a particular theme. Your site can then use multiple themes changing the look and feel of the site as the users navigate it.
- Performance increased by reducing the size of libraries and making the string translation phase a compile-level task.
- User files added, users can upload personal files and download them, admin can set up a quota for users.
- Ephemerides added, text/images can be entered for each day in the calendar and the users can browse them, a module to display today text/image if it exists is also provided.
- Many new minor features, improvements and enhancements were also added for this release.

New features in version 1.5

- You can select the name of your Wiki home page. Can be other than HomePage.
- Now admin has an option to enable full wiki page names allowing spaces and accents and other characters to be part of a wiki page.
- Quick image uploads to wiki pages, you can upload a picture from the editpage feature and have it displayed in the page immediately
- Added a phpinfo link to check your php installation in the admin menu.
- Now you can make batch uploads of zip files for file galleries. If you have the right permission just upload a zip file and all the files will be added to the gallery.
- Now you can use comments for individual blog posts.
- Tikilib code reduced splitting it into smaller libraries reducing memory consumption. (stage1)
- Added a description field for Wiki pages (optional) when this feature is disabled the description is displayed below the page name and as the title of a link to the page (form other pages).
- Added direct link to pages in paginations (optional) if enabled you can jump to any page of a multipage listing by following a link.
- Newsletters added, admins can setup newsletters and users can subscribe, emails are required to confirm subscriptions and prevent spamming. Then admin can simply send an HTML based newsletter to the subscribed (and confirmed) users. Users can unsubscribe using a URL.
- Added an option to generate gzipped output to the browser.
- Base templates can now be defined by theme so you can create a theme presenting a whole different layout for Tiki. You can also use this to create themes including images and other decoration elements in Tiki. Since only base templates are classified by theme you can do it changing just a few files. If you don't want to change the layout just copy the templates from the templates directory if you are creating a theme.
- Changed wiki page names to support up to 150 characters
- Menus now preserve their state between pages (using cookies) if cookies are disabled then menus wont preserve state but will still work as they did before.
- Added plugins to the Wiki, now you can create your own plugins for the wiki to suit your needs. The syntax is simple, see `lib/wiki_plugins/example.php` for a description and example.
- Admin can choose if passwords are stored in plaintext or not. If not, a hash will be used to authenticate users and the remind-password feature will generate a new password and send it by email. The new password will be immediately due so the user will be forced to change it.
- All the JavaScript code has been packed into a library
- Tiki can now be run on any Web server port.

- HTTPS protocol is now supported. Tiki can now run over HTTPS connections.
- BiDi support. Added support for BiDi languages. Added BiDi.css file to control BiDi directionality and layout.
- Added ~ns~ ~/ns~ syntax to the Wiki to make page sections unparsed. Can be used to put HTML code or anything that you want as-is without wiki syntax being parsed.
- Full text searching added (optional). By enabling this feature, results will be sorted by the relevance of the match to the search query. Also, search results will be ordered first by relevance, and then by section (wiki, blog, etc.). Non-fulltext searching continues to sort first by section, and then by 'hits'.
- PHPWikiImport feature. You can export pages from a PHPWiki dump into tiki even versions will be created.
- Export all wiki feature. As admin you can export the whole wiki as a text dump that can later be imported into this or another Tiki site.
- Import/export wiki pages. Wiki pages can now be exported to a .txt Mime-alike format and imported from an exported file.
- Slideshows added, if a wiki page contains more than one ==titlebar== then you can display it as a slide show. This is a very cool feature.
- Admin can select the minimum length for a password to be valid
- Admin can choose if user passwords must include letters and numbers to be valid
- Admin can setup passwords lifetime and Tiki will force the user to change his password once the password is expired.
- Challenge-response authentication added, if enabled and the browser support JavaScript then user passwords are never send across the network being replaced by a challenge-response authentication algorithm. This improves security since the chance of password eavesdropping is reduced a lot.
- Added sections to forums, now you can put forums into sections and the forums listing will list forums for each existing section. (As phpBB and other forum software does).
- Improved forum layout to be nicer (Roger)
- Avatars added to forums. Users can configure their avatars from their user preferences screen, pick an avatar from the library (more than 500) or upload an image to be used as your avatar.
- Surveys, create surveys to get a better understanding on your users opinions, many survey question types, users can fill surveys and stats are stored.
- Many bugs fixed, google module now works, definition lists fixed, wiki lists fixed, etc., etc.
- Webmail, set-up as many POP-accounts as you want, select a "current" account and you will be able to read mails, write emails, delete emails, download attachments, use attachments, write or read HTML based

emails. Manage your address book, automatically add addresses to your address book and all the regular cool webmail features.

- Trackers, trackers are a flexible way to track user-requests and groupware tasks, you can define the fields for each tracker. Many field-types supported. Tracker items can be commented and can have file attachments, tracker items can be assigned to a user or group and will appear in the user preferences page (the user's home). Trackers and tracker items can be monitored and Tiki will send you an email when something is changed. You can open-close tracker items.
- Dates and times are displayed in the time zone specified by the user and/or the administrator. The administrator (but not the user) can also specify the date and time format strings. Month and weekday names are also localized, if locales are configured correctly on the server.

New features in version 1.4

- Quizzes added, you can create quizzes with any number of multiple choice questions, you can assign points to each question and show an Quiz result to the user depending on his score. Quiz results can be stored and stats are kept about Quizzes. You can also indicate a time limit for each quiz and if the quiz can be repeated or not.
- HTML pages added, you can create and display static or dynamic HTML pages that can be used as subhomes, special sections, credits page, live scores for spots, stock values, live news coverage, etc. A very flexible addition and dynamic pages are very interesting.
- Now templates can be edited and applied to wiki pages, articles, submissions and HTML pages.
- Shout box screen and shout box module added a nice way for users to communicate and send shot messages to other users in the site.
- Now admin can choose to store files for file galleries on the database or a directory, using directory requires some extra configuration but may be more comfortable to handle large files.
- Optionally a passcode can be used to let user register into the system, this is useful for semi-public or private sites.
- You can now specify how featured links will open with three options: replace current browser window, open in a new window or open in a iframe inside the window.
- New syntax to underline text in wiki pages
- New syntax to next lists in wiki pages you can use `* , ** , *** , # , ## , ###` etc
- New {showdate} function available to display the current date in modules
- New top games module
- New syntax to display a random image from any gallery {gallery id=n} in modules
- Now groups can include other groups inheriting the included groups permissions
- New syntax for internal links in the wiki: `((page|description))`
- New theme: jalist
- Now you can select individual layout per sections if you want for example to remove a column or a top bar only in the forums, faqs, etc
- New since your last visit module showing new objects since the user last visit
- You can now indicate the default ordering for weblogs in the weblog listing
- You can use any URL as your home page so you can put any tiki section as the home page
- Improved forums section showing more information for the last post in forums and forum topics.
- Now you can collect stats about search terms and as admin see the most searched terms in your site

- Added a usage graph showing the activity for each section of your site (Wiki, Forums, etc)
- You can enable/disable the user ability to change the theme and language from the user preferences screen
- You can add regular expressions to filter filenames for file uploads, you can do positive checks (filename must match regex) and negative checks (filename must not match regex)
- Added google search module
- Added an option to prevent counting the admin page views for site stats
- Modules can now accept parameters in the form of a URL query string (example `foo=1&bar=3`) this can be used to tweak the behavior of modules so you don't need a zillion different modules you can use only one with parameters for the same kind of task.
- Added raw navigation mode to the wiki. You can use `tiki-index_raw.php` instead of `tiki-index.php` to get a raw representation of the Wiki without columns bars and decorations this can be used to feed a program that automatically navigates wikis such as the Touchgraph wiki browser.
- Improved forums listing more information about the last post
- New syntax for wiki table accepting colspanning `||r1c1|r1c1||r2c1c2||`
- Option added in the admin screen to prevent counting admin page views
- Editable drawings can be included in Wiki pages, articles and blog posts using `{draw name=foo}`, a permission is needed to be able to `edit_drawings`. Drawings are stored in a directory and identified by their name. The drawings are edited using a Java applet called `jHotDraw`. This feature can be disabled
- Referrer stats, you can enable an option to store statistics about referrers to your site, a screen where the referrers are listed is provided to see the stats.
- Batch upload of Images. If you have the permission you can upload .zip files and all the images in the zip file are automatically added to the gallery.
- File attachments for wiki pages, with the right permissions you can upload files to wiki pages and a list of attached files will be displayed at the bottom of the wiki page and they can be downloaded.
- Now images for the image galleries can be stored optionally in a directory instead of the database, the same recommendations and tips about storing file uploads should be observed.
- Improved spellchecker, now the spellchecker suggest several options for miss-spelled words and you can choose the option that you prefer from the list.
- Icons are displayed for file extensions when listing files
- You can enable/disable an option to display the page title for wiki pages
- Improved menu builder
- You can now choose if hotword links are opened in a new window

- Reduced the number of queries that tiki makes when loading preferences, if not changed preferences are loaded from a file now this is controlled automatically and you don't have to do anything.
- Integrated search feature you can now search for words on the entire site.

New features in version 1.3

- Spell checking, now you can spell check your articles, submissions, wiki_pages and blog_posts before saving them, the spell checking dictionary for your language must be downloaded and installed to make this work, dictionaries will be provided as simple .sql dumps and can be downloaded from SourceForge. In this edition the english dictionary is provided. (Read the documentation to learn how to install the dictionary). Spell checking can be enabled/disabled for Articles, Submissions, WikiPages and blogs from the admin screen.
- Orphan pages listing, list pages that are not linked from any other wiki page.
- RSS feeds for forums listing the last post to any forum in your site
- RSS feed for individual forums listing the last posts to a given forum
- New Diff routine taken from PHPWiki in the Wiki history for a page, now you can see the diff or compare two versions side-by-side as before.
- New syntax for colored text in the Wiki `~~#0000FF:text~~` to insert text using colors
- Syntax to center text `::text::` will center the text
- Relevance ranking for WikiPages based on a PageRanking algorithm
- You can now send/receive articles from/to other Tiki sites from the communications center
- You can now search deep into subcategories from the category browser
- Added a tool to produce a printable version of multiple Wiki pages
- Now you can preview comment postings in any "commentable" area or in the forums
- BreadCrumb navigation module listing the last "n" pages that you visited
- New feature: FAQs, create and edit faqs, list faqs, popular faqs module and last faqs module, search for text in faqs.
- Several fixes regarding "find" functions in listings
- Find feature in the listing of Wiki pages
- New syntax for WikiPages ((any)) can be used to create the "any" page, now page names are NOT limited to the CapitalizedWordsSmashedTogether rule
- Syntax to prevent converting Smashed words into wiki names use: `((SomeIdea((`
- Now you can double-click on a wiki page to edit it (some browsers only)
- Filter added in the communication center to find specific objects to be sent
- A tool to autogenerate passwords was added in the resgistration screen for lazy users
- New feature: Backups, you can create backups of your entire Tiki base, download backups to be saved in some safe place, upload a backup and restore backups. Backups are encrypted to prevent a user from stealing information from your site.

- New registration mode, now you can make Tiki validate users email address by sending them an email with a link to first-login in Tiki, once activated the user will login normally with his password. Of course this feature is optional and can be enabled/disabled from the Admin screen.
- QuickEdit module, where you can type the name of a WikiPage and quickly edit/create the page without finding a link to the page, this can create a lot of orphan pages but can also be very very helpful to people maintaining the Wiki to quickly create pages and edit them.
- Optionally Tiki can display a "I forgot my password link" for unregistered users to allow users that have forgotten their password to get it by email. You can enable/disable this feature from the Admin screen.
- User Bookmarks, users with the proper permission can create bookmarks and store them in folders, they can admin their bookmarks as they want, a cache is provided for user bookmarks. A user module to display bookmarks with an option to quick-add a Tiki page to the bookmarks is also included.
- Users with the right permission can configure the modules that will be displayed in the left/right columns and the order in which modules will appear. This can be used to let users configure their modules as they want, as an admin you must make all the modules that the users can configure available by default.
- Statistics, a page where you (or anyone with permission) can view a lot of statistics about the site including a graph showing the number of page views per day. Statistics can be enabled/disabled from the admin screen, please suggest new (useful) statistics that can be added in future versions
- Fortune cookies (taglines), you can enter taglines or upload from a textfile, the {cookie} syntax can be used to display a random cookie in articles, posts, wiki pages, etc or any template.
- Games section to play flash games, upload games or use the provided additional game-pack. You can upload new games, edit the descriptions and play.
- Added a new theme: dblue.
- Now the list of users in the current chat channel is displayed in the chatrooms.
- Now you can send private messages in the chatrooms using ":username:message"
- Reviews added, now articles can be normal articles or reviews, for reviews the editor can rate whatever he is reviewing.
- Undo feature in the wiki, if a user can edit pages then he can undo what he edited pressing an undo button, users without permission to remove versions won't be able to undo what other users edited only his editions can be undone.
- Individual permissions for CMS topics added, you can now control who can read some topics, if the topic has no individual permissions then it will be displayed to all the groups. But if you want you can assign the

tiki_p_read_topic permission to some groups for a topic and only those groups will be able to read that topic.

- A mini-popup window can be opened when editing objects to help the user insert special characters in the text, specially latin characters, accents, etc. This is taken from the horde project and submitted by Marc Laporte.
- Tiki is now using Smarty 2.3.1 the last stable Smarty release

New features and changes in version 1.2

- Added a find feature to the lastchanges section in the Wiki (Ramiro)
- Added Categories: You can create categories and subcategories building a category tree, objects (pages, forums, blogs, image galleries, file galleries, etc) can be assigned to one/many categories, the user can browse categories finding objects for each specific category.
- Communications center: Now you can send/receive Wiki pages from/to other Tiki-enabled sites using a simple XMLRPC API, received pages are stored in an "ibox" where an admin can view,edit,remove,accept the pages. This new feature can be used to send a Tiki page from one site to another one!
- Consolidated CSS file, there're two CSS files in this distribution: subSilver and default2, if you want to produce a new theme you can change any of these, subSilver is longer and uses an individual style for every element in Tiki while default2 applies the same style to multiple elements (ie: tables) and thus is a faster way to get a theme ready.
- Forums!, now you can set-up message forums, forums are organized by topics and topics by threads, users can post, reply and quote messages in forums, messages can be voted using the same karma system used in comments. Many features are "copied" from phpBB since it is the best forum software for PHP, we copied those features and integrated the forums with the Tiki permission system, rankings, modules and search engine.
- Now you can upload the thumbnail of an image when uploading an image, this will prevent automatic thumbnail generation. Some users wanted this feature because thumbnail generation didn't work or they wanted to upload their own thumbnails. Maybe you want to have a thumbnail that is not the same as the full image so you can use this feature. Thumbnails will be displayed using the size assigned for thumbnails to the image gallery.
- Now you can set up how old must a version be at least to be removed from the history, this can prevent a user from saving a page "n" times destroying a previous version. (Thanks to tesla2k for the tip)
- Links to help including objects in user modules were added to the admin_modules screen.
- Next and prev buttons were added to view the next/prev image when browsing images from a gallery (Ramiro)
- Now you can control which groups can view image galleries and file galleries
- Individual permissions for image galleries, as an admin you can control which groups can view,admin, upload to a specific gallery overriding global permissions.

- Individual permissions for file galleries, as an admin you can control which groups can view,admin, upload and download to a specific gallery overriding global permissions.
- Individual permissions can be set up by admins to weblogs, so you can control which groups can read, admin and post to specific weblogs.
- From the page-permissions screen admins can set up email addresses that will receive an email when the page changes. If you want to remotely monitor some page this is for you.
- Chatrooms feature (experimental), you can create chatrooms and the users can enter chatrooms and chat, the refreshing time for each chatroom can be configured and the page is not reloaded, only an invisible frame with size 0 is reloaded to get fresh chat messages.
- RSS modules, create RSS modules to display news/events from other sites, you can display RSS feeds in user modules using {rss id=n}, you can set up which feeds can be displayed and the refreshing time for each feed. RSS 0.91 and 1.0 are supported.
- Polls, you can create polls, set polls to be "active,closed,current". Polls can be displayed in modules using {poll id=n} or {poll} to select a random poll from the "current" polls. There's a page to view poll results and old poll results and old polls not closed can be voted. A mechanism to prevent a user from voting many times is also included.
- Menu builder section, you can build menus using sections and options, menus can be static (no javascript) or dynamic. Menus can be displayed in user modules using {menu id=n}
- Comments can now be filtered by threshold
- Comments for weblogs,articles, image galleries, file galleries and polls
- A selected file gallery can be used as the home page for the site
- Now you can enable/disable RSS feeds from the admin screen and limit the maximum number of items for any feed
- New RSS feed for individual file galleries listing the last images uploaded to a given gallery
- New RSS feed for individual image galleries listing the last images uploaded to a given gallery
- New RSS feed for weblogs listing last posts to any weblog
- New RSS feed for file galleries listing last files uploaded
- New RSS feed for image galleries listing last images uploaded
- Random pages module
- Now you can include dynamic content blocks in wiki pages using {content id=n} or {rcontent id=n}
- Now you can use {rcontent id=n} to select a random content from a dynamic block content, the {content id=3} syntax can also be used to select the last current content for a block
- New Wiki element: ^some^ will render "some" inside a simple box
- The layout can be configured from the admin screen you can enable/disable the columns, top bar and footer

New features and changes in version 1.1

- The edit button now shows on red if someone may be editing the page, this helps preventing two users from editing the same page. This feature can be enabled/disabled from the admin menu.
- Now HTML tags are filtered out from weblog posts except normal tags such as a,p,img,br,table,i,b,etc
- Link added to edit the page from the wiki pagelist
- Page generation time was added below the footer
- The featured links admin screen has been revamped, now featured links can be enabled/disabled and ordered as you want, an automatic ordering feature by link-hits was also added. Hits are now counted and displayed for featured links.
- The titlebars in wikipages are now brown instead of the terrible blue ones.
- File galleries, create galleries, add files to galleries, download files. Permissions configurable, rankings for file galleries and modules available.
- Module names are now sorted in the admin modules screen
- Now you can see permissions according to categories when assigning permissions to groups, the assign permissions screen was revamped
- Wiki page comments, now you can activate/deactivate comments for wiki pages, comments can be voted and replied, configurable permissions and karma system for comment points(!)
- Fixed minor layout problems and xhtml glitches
- Several bugfixes and minor improvements on the code.

New features and changes in version 1.0

- Added blogs to Tiki, users can create blogs, post entries in blogs, find entries, etc.
- The calendar can be now used to navigate blogs watching the posts for a given day.
- Added an XMLRPC interface compatible with blogger, users can use desktop applications such as blogbuddy or blogger to send posts to weblogs.
- Added a CMS system to Tiki, topics and articles can be edited and published or programmed to be published.
- Added submissions to Tiki, users can send submissions, admins can approve them and make them articles.
- Improved the search engine, now you can search in pages, galleries, images, blogs and/or articles, added pagination to the search results page.
- Added an option to select the home page of the application, it can be the Wiki HomePage, a blog, the articles homepage (listing last n articles) or an Image Gallery.
- Make the main application menu expandable/collapsible per section.
- Added banners (Beta version) admins can add banners classified in zones, a banner can be displayed in any template using a simple syntax (including user modules) banners can display HTML code, an image or text (text adds) a page with banner stats accessible by users (clients) is also available
- Templates can now be edited from Tiki
- Added a dynamic content system, this allows to edit blocks that can be included in any template or user module using a simple syntax. Blocks can be programmed for the future and are automatically changed by Tiki. This feature adds a lot of flexibility to the application.

Introduction

Welcome to Tiki! the most advanced system ever (not true ☺). Tiki incorporates all the features present in several excellent wiki systems available today plus a lot of new features and options allowing your wiki application to be whatever you want it to be, from a simple wiki to a complex site for a whole user community with many intermediate steps, you can use Tiki for a forums site, a chatroom, polls, etc etc.

Tiki Features

The Wiki

The Wiki is a collaboration environment where the users can edit the pages they read. Links to wikipages are created automatically using capitalized words smashed together. A special editing syntax is used to provide features such as bold text, images, external links etc. A history is kept for each page so admins can view diffs and rollback a page to a previous version if a user breaks a page. Wikis can be used for documentation, support, intranets, and many other uses. The Tiki Wiki system has all the normal features Wikis have plus a lot more.

Image Galleries

Image galleries are collections of images, users can create galleries and upload images to their galleries or public galleries. You can select the number of thumbnails to appear in rows/files of galleries as well as the thumbnails size. Thumbnails are automatically created by Tiki, you don't have to upload them. Galleries can be used for albums, stories, showrooms and many other applications.

Articles and submissions

The articles & submissions system allows editors to publish articles, articles can belong to a topic and topics can be administered, the articles can use an image or the topic image, you can set up the publishing date of any article allowing you to program articles for the future. The article content can use the Wiki syntax or regular HTML. Links and images in articles are automatically cached to prevent content that resides in other pages from disappearing from your articles. The CMS system has also submissions, users can send 'proposed articles' as submissions and the editors can edit the submissions, remove them or approve them becoming articles. There's a home page where the last "n"

articles are shown. With this CMS system you can easily set-up a site like you did using systems such as PHPNuke or PostNuke.

Blogs

Blogs are great and they are ver popular today of course we have blogs ☺. A weblog is a collection of “posts” ordered by date, it’s like a Journal on the web. A post can be a comment about something the user did, a review, a thought, anything. The Tiki Blogs system is quite powerful, users can create blogs and of course post entries into their blogs or public blogs. If you want you can choose a Blog and make it appear as the home page of the site. Tiki also implements the Blogger XMLRPC interface allowing you to use applications such as wBlogger or Blogbuddy to manage and edit weblogs.

Banners

Some time ago banners were used to generate revenues for succesful websites, today this practice is not that frequent but banners are still popular. Why? Because they are a great way to generate traffic for a web site, community sites, weblogs, e-zines and many sites can use banners and interchange banners with other sites to generate more visitors, more page views and more traffic to their sites.

This version of Tiki incorporates the first stage of the banners system, it support image banners, HTML banners (used in banner exchange sites) and TextAdds. Banners are assigned to “zones” in your application. There’re a lot of configurable options for banners such as maximum number of impressions, weekdays when the banner can be displayed, hours, etc. Banner clients are normal Tiki users and they can view banners assigned to them accessing a page where banner stats are displayed. Including banners in Tiki is easy using a very simple syntax in any template or user module.

Dynamic Content System

The Dynamic Content System (DCS) is a very simple concept, you can edit blocks of HTML code or text from a admin screen and you can display a block in any Tiki template or user module. Updating the block content will update the template. You can also program block content by date storing several blocks to be displayed in future dates. This simple system adds a lot of flexibility to Tiki, you can display anything you like anywhere in the screen and you can set-up portions that can be changed or that change atomatically along time.

The DCS can be used for example:

- To display a quote in the top bar or a user module
- To display news in a user module
- To announce products, chats, news according to time
- To announce any event
- To display sport results or sports information
- Anything!

File Galleries

The file galleries section of Tiki is a download manager, you can create/edit file galleries which are collections of files, you can define with the permission system who can create file galleries, upload files and download files. Statistics are recorded for each download, rankings where defined for the top downloaded files, most visited file galleries and last uploaded files. Modules are also available to display last changed file galleries, last uploaded files, top downloaded files and top visited file galleries.

You can use file galleries to distribute free multimedia (mp3, avis, etc), to distribute software (versions, patches, releases), to add files that users can download from Wiki pages, articles or weblog posts, etc.

Featured Links

The featured links section is just a link manager, you can enter as many links as you want and there's an user module to display the links in the order that you want. Clicking the links will open the site in a frame inside the central section of Tiki. Statistics are kept about the number of times that featured links were visited and you can automatically order featured links by the number of hits they had.

Comments

Version 1.1 of Tiki adds a comments engine to Tiki, in v 1.1 comments are used to provide user-feedback to many Tiki features: users can comment: Wiki pages, image galleries, file galleries, articles and polls. The comment system can be configured to allow users to vote comments, a karma system maintains a "level" for each user the level improves when a user comment is voted by another user. Good qualified users votes add more points to a comment than users who didn't get good qualifications. Comments can be displayed/hidden using simple controls and the user can control how to sort votes, the number of votes to see by page and the minimum threshold (score) for a vote to be displayed.

Forums

Forums are a must-have feature for a community site, a forum is a collection of topics and each topic is a collection of user messages about that topic. Using Tiki you can configure as many forums as you want and establish permissions to determine who can create forums, admin forums, create topics, post messages, vote messages, etc. Individual permissions can be set for forums so you can have private forums only visible to some user groups. The forums section in Tiki has many advanced features such as auto-pruning to prevent the base of messages growing too big, flood-preventing, sticky topics, locked topics etc. The forums section in this manual describes all the user-level features for forums while the admin section of forums in this manual will describe how to admin the forums system.

ChatRooms

Chatrooms are an experimental feature in Tiki, admins can create chat channels and the users can join the channels, once in a channel users post messages that are broadcasted to all the users in the same chatroom. Chatroom messages are updated at a given interval that can be configured for each chat channel (you may want a channel to refresh faster than others). Future Tiki version might add new features such as private channels, moderated chats, etc.

Communications center

The communications center is a feature not found in many CMS systems, basically it lets you send/receive objects to and from other Tiki-powered sites. You can control who can send you objects and who can admin the received objects. A special inbox is used to examine received objects and you can edit the objects, remove them or accept them from this inbox. Accepted objects will appear as normal Tiki objects. For example if you see a nice Wiki page about a specific topic or a set of pages useful to your site you can ask for them and use this feature to receive the pages from another site. The communications center is based on an XMLRPC api to send/receive objects so you can build desktop applications or adapt existing systems to interact with your Tiki site.

Polls

Polls are another typical feature in user-community sites, using Tiki you can create as many polls as you want and display from zero to “n” polls in the

Tiki pages, you can also have a set of “active” polls and display only one poll in the page, in such a case Tiki will rotate through the set of active polls. Users with the right permission can vote polls, see poll results, examine old polls and vote any poll that is not “closed”.

Categories

Categories are a way to classify Tiki objects (Blogs, Image galleries, Articles, Polls, Forums, Wiki Pages, File Galleries). You can create a category tree creating categories and adding as many sub-categories as you want to any category. Any Tiki object can then be added to one or many categories if you want. The user will be able to use a category browser navigating the category tree with links to the objects in the category. This can be used to let the users find all the information your Tiki site has about a specific topic/subject regardless if the information is in an article, a weblog or a file gallery.

In future versions categories can be used for other powerful features such as establishing permissions per category etc.

FAQs

FAQs (Frequently asked questions) are lists of common questions and answers about a specific topic. FAQs are a very common tool in communities to group popular questions and have them solved in a common place without the need to repeat the same answer multiple times.

Tiki allows you to create as many FAQs as you want with any number of questions in each FAQ, users will be able to browse FAQs and read the questions and their answers.

Quizzes

Quizzes can be used for fun, for trivia, for contests or for courses and e-learning sites. A quiz is made of a number of multiple-choice questions, each option in a question can be assigned positive or negative points. After the user takes a Quiz Tiki computes the score and an answer can be displayed to the user depending on his score. You can control if quizzes can be repeated and you can indicate a time limit for Quizzes. If you want Quiz results can be stored and you can review the result of any stored quiz and the user answers. Stats are always stored for Quizzes keeping track of the results of each quiz.

HTML pages and dynamic pages

Tiki offers a simple way for creating pages that will be displayed to the users and that can be linked from/to any place in your site, just create an HTML page using the editor and then you can access it using `tiki-page.php?pageName=some`. This simple system can be extended with the addition of dynamic pages. A dynamic page is an HTML page where you can use the syntax `{ed id=foo}` to create dynamic sections inside the page, an editor will be automatically available to edit each dynamic zone of a dynamic page. Dynamic pages will be automatically updated without a browser refresh and without making the user refresh the page. So dynamic pages are great for sport scores, stock information, real time coverage of events or other users that you may imagine.

Surveys

Surveys can be used to poll the opinion of users in your site. You can create surveys using different question formats. You can use short-text questions, multiple-choice questions, single-choice questions and two different rate questions. Users can fill the surveys and then you/users can check the stats.

Trackers

Trackers are a powerful and flexible tool. Trackers are used to keep a record of a collection of items and you can set up what fields items will have per tracker. Then you can add/remove items, list items, comment items, attach files to items etc. Items can be assigned to user/groups and if the item is open it will appear in the user-preferences screen. Trackers/items can be monitored by email. You can use trackers for support tickets, feature requests, buying orders, bug reporting, feedback reporting, submission of news, etc etc. Many workflows can be modeled using one or more trackers.

Newsletters

The newsletters feature allow admin to define as many newsletters as he want, users can subscribe to newsletters and a email confirmation is required to prevent spamming. Then admin can send HTML based newsletters to the subscribed and confirmed users to a newsletter. This can be used to communicate your site news, broadcast site events etc.

Directory

This feature is similar to the Dmoz directory or other links directories. Admins can create a tree of unlimited categories. Categories can be related. Links are assigned to one or many categories. The user can browse links navigating the categories or searching. Users can suggest links that may need to be validated by an admin before being posted. Some rankings displaying the last sites or the most popular sites are supported. Modules to display some rankings or stats for the directory are also provided.

Ephemerides

The ephemerides section can be used to associate one or many images and/or texts for each day of the year, users can then browse the associated information for a particular day and a module can be used to display the information for the current day. This can be used to display comic strips, quotes, national holidays, and many other ideas.

My Tiki section

Logged users can enjoy a lot of features entering the My Tiki section, all this features can be enabled/disabled by admin. The MyTiki section contains the following features:

- Webmail
- Inter user messages
- User notepad
- User tasks
- User files
- User calendar
- User menus
- User preferences
- User bookmarks
- User modules
- Newsreader

Webmail

The webmail feature allows your users to have a nice webmail version for their email accounts. Users can set an account by indicating the POP3 and SMTP server to use. Then they will be able to read mails, send mails, manage

attachments, manage contacts and the regular webmail features. Tiki can read and write HTML based emails as normal webmail programs do.

Inter-User Messages

Users can send messages to other tiki users and read/reply/remove messages in their mailboxes. Messages can have a priority and the user may choose to be notified by email when important messages are received by Tiki. The user can close his mailbox from this user preferences screen and he will not receive messages. Messages can be flagged for follow up. Admins can send broadcast messages to all the users in a Tiki site. A module to display the number of unread messages is also included. User with permission can send messages to all the members of a group.

User notepad

Using the notepad users can write notes, upload notes, download notes and read notes. Notes can be read as raw text files or as wiki pages interpreting the wiki markup syntax. The user-quota that admin can control is used to control the maximum size that user notes can take.

User tasks

User tasks let the user set-up to-do tasks and then view the current tasks, mark them as done or delete them. A task can be programmed to be activated in future date. A module that lets the user manipulate tasks is provided.

User files

This feature can be used to let users store personal files in a Tiki site they can upload files and then download them when they want. A quota can be setup to control the maximum size of personal files per-user.

User calendar

The calendar can be used at user level to enter events for any date. Events can be viewed in a daily view, weekly view or as a list. Reminders can be used to remember the user about an event some time before it starts. The tiki calendar can be imported and exported from Outlook.

User menus

Using user menus the user can add personal items to the User Menu section in the application menu. An option is provided to let the user automatically add all the top level bookmarks to his personal menu.

User preferences

User preferences let the user select all the user-level preferences for the site like his personal Avatar, time zone, theme, language etc.

User bookmarks

User bookmarks let users bookmark internal or external pages, create folders and organize his personal bookmarks in folders. Bookmarks can be cached if that option is enabled. A module is provided to let the users see his bookmarks navigate them and add new bookmarks.

User modules

The user modules section when enabled let the users configure the position and appearance of modules in the left and right columns of a Tiki site.

Newsreader

The newsreader can be used to let the user browse news from any NTTP site, they can read news and mark already news to know when new posts appear.

What is Tiki?.....	3
About this version.....	3
New features in version 1.6	4
New features in version 1.5	6
New features in version 1.4	9
New features in version 1.3	12
New features and changes in version 1.2	15
New features and changes in version 1.1	17
New features and changes in version 1.0	18
Introduction.....	19
Tiki Features	19
The Wiki	19
Image Galleries.....	19
Articles and submissions	19
Blogs.....	20
Banners.....	20
Dynamic Content System	20
File Galleries	21
Featured Links	21
Comments	21
Forums	22
ChatRooms	22
Communications center.....	22
Polls	22
Categories	23
FAQs	23
Quizzes	23
HTML pages and dynamic pages	24
Surveys	24
Trackers	24
Newsletters.....	24
Directory.....	25
Ephemerides	25
My Tiki section	25
Webmail.....	25
Inter-User Messages	26
User notepad.....	26
User tasks.....	26
User files	26
User calendar.....	26
User menus	27
User preferences	27
User bookmarks	27
User modules.....	27

Newsreader	27
Extra Features	39
Installation	40
Requirements.....	40
Optional requirements	40
Tiki distributions	40
Alpha night builds:.....	41
How to get the last Alpha or CVS version?	41
Beta versions:	42
Stable releases:	42
After unzipping a distribution	42
Tiki directories.....	42
Important: directory permissions	42
Understanding directories	43
Configuring the database	44
Installing a new tiki version from scratch.....	44
Upgrading the database	45
Let tiki know your DB setup	46
If the installation worked.....	46
Admin quick start:	46
Installing tiki in tight hostings or under safe_mode environments.....	46
Installation Troubleshooting	46
Why is this happening to me?	46
All I can see is a blank page (easy to fix!).....	46
I have problems uploading large files	47
I get an error open(temp\xsess_9818368762,O_RDWR) error	47
I can't login.....	47
Everything work but uploads	47
I get an error: Allowed memory size of XXX exhausted.....	48
I'm getting some bizarre errors	48
I get the error: DB error connect failed	48
I get the error: unable to access templates_c/something.... warning/error fwrite() argument is not a valid resource... ..	48
I get the error: unable to access modules/cache/something.... warning/error fwrite() argument is not a valid resource... ..	48
After installation	48
Initial Configuration	48
Understanding the application menu.....	49
Building your own menus	50
Tiki Sections:	52
The Wiki	54
The Wiki	54
Configuring the wiki.....	54
Configuring Wiki dumps	54
Configuring Wiki tags	54
Configuring Wiki comments	55

Configuring Wiki attachments	55
Configuring other settings	55
Configuring wiki features	56
Using the wiki.....	58
Creating and Editing Pages	58
Viewing a Page	61
Understanding what each button does:	61
Printable	62
Edit.....	62
Remove Page	63
Lock	63
Permissions & email notifications	63
History	64
Backlinks.....	67
Similar Pages.....	67
Undo	67
Slides.....	68
Export	68
Rename	68
Cached pages.....	68
Editing pages and the Wiki markup syntax.....	69
The edit screen	69
The Wiki Tag System.....	73
Normal text	73
References to other wiki pages.....	74
Links to external wikis, inter-wiki links.....	74
Links to external pages	75
Bold and italic text	76
Underline	76
Colors	76
Centering text.....	76
Lists	77
Bullet lists.....	77
Numbered lists	77
Definition lists	77
Monospaced text	78
Using tables.....	78
Including images.....	78
Including drawings in your pages	78
Including images in your pages	79
Uploading images to a wiki page (quick way to add images)	79
Special images: wiki graphs	80
Title bar	80
Boxes.....	81
The help links	82
Special characters.....	82

Non parsed sections	82
Slideshows	83
Plugins	84
Plugins distributed with Tiki	86
Wiki handlers.....	92
Full HTML editing	92
The Raw mode, using external Wiki visualization tools	92
Using the Touchgraph wiki browser	93
Special Pages.....	94
The SandBox	95
Personal User Pages.....	95
Dumping the Wiki link structure	95
Wiki page descriptions.....	96
Wiki file Attachments	96
Wiki Menu.....	96
Last Changes	97
Rankings	98
Dump	98
List Pages.....	98
Sand Box	99
Orphan Pages.....	100
Print	101
Structures	102
Permissions for the Wiki.....	106
The Wiki mail-in feature.....	106
wiki-get accounts	107
wiki-put accounts	107
wiki-append accounts	108
wiki-accounts.....	108
Image Galleries.....	108
The galleries menu.....	108
Galleries.....	108
Creating a gallery	109
Edit.....	111
Remove	111
Upload	111
Browse	111
List	112
Upload Image.....	112
Batch upload	114
Browsing galleries	114
Individual permissions for image galleries	116
Rankings.....	117
The System Gallery	117
Image galleries permissions	118
Articles, Reviews and Submissions	118

Topics	119
Articles and reviews	119
Editing Articles	120
Articles Home	121
List Articles	122
Rankings	123
Submit Article	123
View Submissions	124
Permissions for articles and submissions	124
The Blog System	125
Create/Edit Blog	125
List Blogs	126
Post.....	127
Reading a weblog.....	127
Setting individual permissions for a weblog	128
Rankings	129
Using Desktop Applications for your Blogs	129
Using wBlogger.....	130
Permissions for the blog system	132
File Galleries	133
Listing file galleries.....	133
Creating file galleries	134
Uploading files	134
Batch uploads	135
Listing file galleries and downloading files	136
Permissions	136
Comments	137
Controlling the display of comments	138
Voting comments and the karma system	139
Permissions	139
The search engine	141
Full text search	141
Featured Links	142
My Tiki.....	142
Permissions	142
The MyTiki bar	143
The MyTiki screen.....	143
The user preferences screen	144
User Avatars	146
User messages.....	147
Mailbox.....	147
Composing messages	148
Broadcasting	149
Permissions	150
User tasks.....	150
The list of tasks:.....	150

Tasks and dates:	151
Editing a task:	151
The user tasks module	152
User bookmarks	152
The user bookmarks module	153
Configuring modules	154
The newsreader	156
Selecting a server	156
Selecting a group	156
Reading news	157
Webmail	159
Configuring webmail accounts	159
Reading emails	160
Writing emails	161
Managing contacts	163
The user notepad	165
Listing notes	165
Writing a note	165
Reading a note	166
User files	167
Configuring userfiles	168
User Menu	168
Calendar	169
Calendar preferences	170
Adding events	171
Daily view	171
Weekly view	172
Event list	173
Exporting	173
Ephemerides	174
The directory	175
Related ctageories	178
Managing sites	179
Site validation	180
Browsing the directory	180
New sites/ Cool sites	181
Suggesting a site	182
Permissions	183
Polls	184
Permissions	185
Categories	185
Permissions:	186
Chat	187
Permissions	189
Forums	189
Creating/editing forums	189

Using the forum	192
Setting Individual permissions for a forum	194
Forum Rankinks	195
Forum permissions	195
The communications center	196
Sending objects	196
How to test if this is working.	197
Administering received Wiki pages	198
Administering other received objects	198
Permissions	199
FAQs	199
Creating FAQs	200
Viewing a FAQ	201
Suggesting FAQ questions	202
Permissions:	203
Stats	203
Games	206
Quizzes	208
Creating Quizzes	208
Adding questions to quizzes	210
Editing question options	211
Programming answers for Quiz scores	212
Taking a Quiz	213
Viewing quiz stats	215
Viewing specific quiz results	215
Viewing user answers for a quiz	216
Quiz modules	217
Permissions	217
HTML pages and dynamic pages	218
What are HTML pages	218
Static vrs dynamic pages	218
Editing a page	219
Applying templates for HTML pages	220
Editing dynamic zones for a page	220
Static and dynamic pages again	221
How dynamic pages work	222
Permissions	222
The shout box	222
What is the shout box?	222
The shout box screen	222
The shout box module	223
Permissions	224
Spell checking	224
Installing the spellchecking dictionaries	224
Drawings	227
Adminnistering drawings	228

Permissions	229
Surveys	229
Creating surveys	229
Survey questions	230
Short text questions	231
Single choice questions	232
Multiple choice questions	232
Rate 1..5 questions	232
Rate 1..10 questions	232
Listing surveys	232
Taking a survey	233
Survey stats	233
Permissions	234
Trackers	234
Creating trackers	235
Adding fields to a tracker	235
Using a tracker	237
Assigning items to users	240
Monitoring items	241
Permissions	241
Example a tracker to review movies	242
Newsletters	244
Creating newsletters	244
Listing newsletters	245
Subscribing and unsubscribing	246
Sending newsletters	246
Administration	247
Understanding users and groups	248
User administration	248
Group administration	249
Including groups in groups	250
Assigning users to groups	251
Assigning permissions to groups	251
Permissions	252
Permissions for individual users	258
Individual permissions	258
The general administration panel	259
Features	260
General preferences and settings	263
User registration settings	268
Wiki settings	270
Image Galleries settings	270
File Galleries	271
CMS settings	274
Blog settings	274
Forums settings	275

Poll settings	276
FAQ settings	276
Tracker settings	276
RSS feeds settings	276
Modules	278
User modules	278
Assign module	279
Assigned modules	280
Edit/Create user module	281
Including the current date in user modules	281
Including dynamic content in user modules	281
Including banners in user modules	282
Including polls in user modules	282
Displaying a random image from a gallery	282
Including RSS feeds in user modules	282
Advanced editing	283
Available System Modules	283
Special modules: The calendar module	285
Featured Links	286
The cache	286
Hotwords	287
Edit templates	288
Banners	289
Creating and editing banners	290
Fixed URL banner	293
Text banner	294
Displaying banners	294
Viewing stats	295
Dynamic Content System	296
Creating and editing blocks	296
Creating and editing content for a block	298
Displaying DCS blocks	300
Programming content	302
The Menu Builder	304
Creating and editing menus	304
Including menus in user modules	307
Polls	308
Creating/editing polls	308
Using polls	310
Using RSS feeds from other sites	310
The Chat system	313
Categories	313
The subcategories listing:	314
Editing or adding sub categories	315
Category objects	315
Adding objects to the current category	315

Fortune cookies (AKA taglines)	316
Backups	317
Creating backups	318
Downloading backups	318
Uploading backups	319
Restoring backups	319
Automating backups	319
Content Templates	320
Search stats	322
Referrer stats	322
Email notifications	323
Editing mail messages	323
The theme control center	324
Importing pages from PHPWiki or other Tiki systems	326
Customizing and extending Tiki	326
Creating Themes	327
Overriding templates	327
Presentation	327
The default2 theme:	328
The subsilver theme:	328
The Jalist theme:	328
The dblue theme	329
The elegant theme	329
The boreal theme	329
The whitebluegreen theme	329
The bluegrey theme	330
The Codex theme	330
Integrating other web applications into Tiki	331
Customizing the application (Tiki for programmers)	331
Internationalization and languages	332
Creating a new language (this is easy!)	332
Adding new features to Tiki	333
Basic rules	333
Tutorial: adding a graffiti wall to Tiki	333
Planning our module	333
The library	334
Coding the graffitti module	337
Adding the graffitti module as a tiki feature	340
Modifying tiki using Smarty filters	340
Prefilters	341
Postfilters	341
Outputfilters	341
How to add a filter:	341
Appendix A: FAQ	342
Appendix B: Installing tiki under safe_mode	344
Installing Tiki without Linux root rights	344

Background	344
Assumptions for the rest of the discussion.....	344
Checking if something is actually wrong	345
Installing the PEAR stuff locally.....	345
Testing the PEAR installation	346
The Tiki installation	347
Address for comments.....	348
Credits.....	348

Extra Features

- Works with PHP4 even if register globals is off
- Uses CSS to define the look and feel, themes are CSS files
- The generated code is valid XHTML 1.0 transitional
- Windows & Unix compatible
- Easy installation and configuration
- PEAR:DB is used, you can use this application with your favourite DBMs without changing the code
- Templates allow the user to change the look and feel of the whole application (Smarty the PHP template engine is used)
- Automatic – internationalization, translate a language file and use it, language files are automatically generated by a provided script.
- Administrators can edit pages, blogs and articles using full HTML tags
- The calendar can be used to view articles or blog entries for a given day.
- Manage permissions using groups (permissions are assigned to groups)
- Configurable sidebar boxes
- Auto-Caching system for URLs
- Auto capture for images.
- Versioning system for pages where you can
 - Review a page version
 - Rollback a page to a given version
 - Remove unwanted versions or pages
 - Diff different versions of a Page
- Individual permissions for pages, file galleries, image galleries, forums and weblogs can be set-up optionally
- Search engine for Wiki pages, blogs, images, image galleries, forums, file galleries and articles.
- Rankings for pages, blogs, articles , image galleries, file galleries and forums.
- Dump to XHTML of the Wiki.
- Integrated RSS feeds (many) to syndicate your site's content

Installation

Requirements

- PHP 4.1+ (Tiki won't work with older versions of PHP)
 - You don't need any specific PHP extension to install Tiki but GD is recommended and will be used if you have it. (GD is bundled by default with PHP 4.3+)
 - If you want to use uploads (files,images) make sure uploads are enabled on the php.ini configuration.
 - Tiki uses sessions (a common mechanism in PHP4) make sure the path where PHP stores sessions (php.ini) exists and that PHP can write to that path.
 - **It is highly recommended to increase the maximum memory size for PHP scripts from 8Mb to 16Mb in your php.ini configuration file. (Note from 1.6 Tiki MAY run in 8Mb environments)**
- A MySQL database (support for other databases is included but we don't provide the .sql script to generate the base yet)
- A webserver that can run PHP. Apache is strongly recommended but other webserver may work as well.

Optional requirements

- GD library > 1.5 and PHP compiled to use GD (for thumbnail generation and dynamic chart generation), not needed if you use PHP 4.3+ since GD is bundled.
- Since GD does need zlib the zlib extension is required by transitivity.
- Graphviz (<http://www.research.att.com/sw/tools/graphviz/>) if you plan to generate graphs. Just install graphviz (Unix/Windows). If you use Windows copy graphviz binary files (dot.exe, neato.exe, etc) from the graphviz bin folder to the windows\system32 or equivalent folder. (it's not the same to put the exes in the path they must be in a windows system directory)

Tiki distributions

Installing Tiki is easy, first of all you should obtain a distribution of the application, you should already have one if you are reading this file. Tiki can be distributed in several formats, zip, bz, tgz, etc. Unzip, untar or uncompress the Tiki distribution in a directory that can be accessed from your web server. For

example /www/htdocs, Tiki will create a tiki directory and put all the files and directories of the application under that directory.

There're three kind of Tiki distributions.

- Alpha night builds
- Beta versions
- Stable releases

Alpha night builds:

This are just a zip or tgz compilation of the current CVS development version. These builds are intended for developers or really intrepid users, there will be a lot of untested features and unfinished sections and you may need to do some manouvers to install it.

How to get the last Alpha or CVS version?

Unix users: You only need cvs installed this is normally installed so you won't need anything.

Windows users: You will also need cvs and the best-approach is to download and install CygWin, a Unix-like environment for Windows Machines, after installing CygWin you will have a Unix-like shell window where CVS can be executed directories are mapped to your Windows directories so everything will be easy. Just download and install CygWin.

Once you have cvs ready to use either as Unix or using CygWin you should type the following commands:

```
cvs -d:pserver:anonymous@cvs.sourceforge.net:/cvsroot/tikiwiki login
cvs -z3 -d:pserver:anonymous@cvs.sourceforge.net:/cvsroot/tikiwiki co
modulename
```

This will download the last CVS version of tiki to the tiki subdirectory in the directory where you executed the commands. Once Tiki is checked-out you can update your CVS version using the following command from the tiki directory:

```
cvs -d:pserver:anonymous@cvs.sourceforge.net:/cvsroot/tikiwiki login
cvs up -dP
```

Please remember: CVS versions have all the latest new features and gizmos and experimental tools but they can be highly unstable. Said that we do encourage users to "play" with CVS versions helping us find bugs and problems and thus making it easier to produce a stable release.

Beta versions:

Beta versions are released to make the stable releases better. Beta versions have the latest features and new improvements but may be buggy, by testing and reporting beta version bugs users can cooperate to a better official release. If you don't mind having some bugs you may want to use a beta version to have the new features ready and test them.

Stable releases:

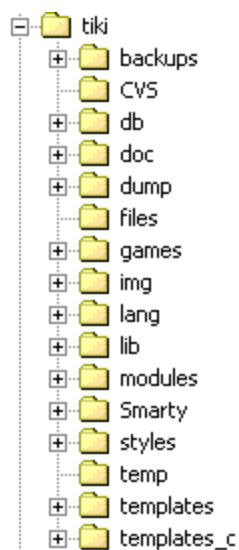
Stable releases are the result of the beta version after a testing period. Tiki is a young application so they may still have some bugs (we claim to be fast no to be perfect). Whenever an important bug is found in an stable 1.X.X version an immediate 1.X.X+1 version will be released to let our users have the bug immediately fixed and enjoy the product.

So go and grab the distribution you want to use and keep reading.

After unzipping a distribution

Tiki directories

This is generally the directory structure used by Tiki



Important: directory permissions

You need to ensure that PHP can write to the following directories:

- backups (if you plan to use backups)
- dump (if you plan to use Wiki dumps or export the Wiki)
- games (if you plan to enable game uploading) Make sure that games/thumbs and games/flash are also writeable.
- img/wiki (if you want to use drawings)
- img/wiki_up (if you want quick picture uploading to wiki pages)
- modules/cache (**Mandatory**)
- temp (if you want to enable batch uploading)
- templates_c (**Needed to run tiki**)

If for some reason you don't have one of these directories created then create it and check it.

If you want to store file uploads, image uploads, wiki attachments or tiki_tracker attachments in the file_system (instead of the database) you may want to create directories to store those files. You can create only one directory or create one for each category (files will be named using an md5 hash so they won't overlap). After creating the directory(ies) just make sure that PHP can write to the directories and you will be able to configure the path in the admin screen.

Note: creating the directories outside the document root can be a good idea to prevent users from downloading the files directly (if they know the name of the directory). If you can't create directories outside the doc_root don't worry it is just an extra precaution. (More information about this in the image galleries and file galleries configuration section of the admin screen in this manual)

There's a setup.sh to guide you setup the permissions on Unix environments. Use "bash setup.sh" for an explanation on most Linux systems.

Understanding directories

(you can skip this section if you just want to install and use Tiki)

You can install tiki in any directory and you can name the tiki directory as you want, but you have to respect the internal directory structure of the application since Tiki relies on certain directory names to find modules, images and language files.

The directories contain the following information:

Directory	Description
db	This is where the database connection script is included and the SQL script to create the database is found.

dump	In this directory is where Tiki generates the xhtml dump of the pages to allow users/admins to download a locally browseable version of the Wiki
img	Images used by Tiki. Drawings are stored in img/wiki so the directory must be writeable by PHP if you want to use drawings.
games	This is where tiki finds games, the flash subdirectory will contain the flash binaries and the thumbs directory will store the thumbnails and descriptions of games (as txt files)
lang	Root for languages
lang/en, lang/sp, etc	Each directory contains a language.php file with the translation of the application strings to the language.
lib	Library files used by Tiki (The Tiki API)
modules	PHP code for modules
modules/cache	This is where Tiki stores cached results from modules. Must be writeable by PHP.
Smarty	The Smarty distribution used with Tiki
styles	CSS files used by the application, each CSS file defines a « Theme » that can be used
temp	A temp directory where tiki unzips zip files if you use batch uploading of images.
templates	Smarty templates for the application. If you plan to use the Tiki edit templates feature then this directory has to be writeable by PHP.
templates/modules	Smarty templates for modules
templates_c	This is where Smarty stores compiled templates (Smarty compiles templates as php scripts). Must be writeable by PHP.
templates/styles	In this directory you will find the template files used by each theme, themes can redefine templates to change the layout and look and feel of Tiki.

Configuring the database

Installing a new tiki version from scratch

Once all the files are in-place you should create a database for Tiki tables, we'll use MySQL in this example.

Create a database

```
mysqladmin create tiki
```

Or use PHPMyadmin or a similar program to create a database.

VERY IMPORTANT NOTE: From version 1.6 after unpacking the files and creating the database just point your browser to tiki-install.php, the script will install Tiki.

If for some reason you want to perform a manual installation you can keep reading.

And then run the tiki.sql script that creates and inits the tables.

```
mysql tiki < tiki.sql
```

You can create a user that will be used by the application to access the database in such a case don't forget to give the database user permission to select, read and write to the tiki database.

NOTE: Tiki tables are named tiki-name and users-* thus you can make tiki share the database with another application without name-collisions between tables, this is particularly useful when installing the application in a hosting.

Now point your browser to <http://yoursite.com/something/tiki/tiki-index.php> and you should see some page displaying an error message since you won't have permission to access any feature yet. If you see a page generated by Tiki then congratulations, you have successfully installed Tiki.

Upgrading the database

If you have a previous Tiki version and you want to keep the content you have in your database you should use a tiki_vX.XtoX.X.sql style file to upgrade the database. For example tiki_0.95to1.0.sql upgrades the Tiki 0.95 database to version 1.0 adding the tables and changes needed to run the new features in version 1.0

If you want to add 0.9 to 1.0 without losing your data upgrade first 0.9 to 0.95 and then 0.95 to 1.0 using the ad-hoc .sql files. Etc...

Let tiki know your DB setup

Now you can edit the file `db/tiki-db.php` and setup your databasename, host, user and password for the database. You may need to contact your system administrator or ISP to know what databasename, user and password you can use.

If the installation worked

Admin quick start:

- Login as admin/admin
- Read the admin section in this manual.
- Click the admin link in the menu (the admin word between the - and + signs of the admin menu. It will take you to the main admin screen where a lot of parameters for your site can be set-up.

Installing tiki in tight hostings or under safe_mode environments.

Please see Apendix B by Markku Niskanen with instructions about this particular setup.

Installation Troubleshooting

(portions by Richard Harb)

Why is this happening to me?

Tiki is an application designed to be installed under almost ANY PHP configuration, however there're a lot of different things that some administrators like to change on the PHP setup that may affect Tiki. In the 99% of the support cases we attended about Tiki installation the problem wasn't Tiki and it wasn't the user it was just a missconfigured PHP installation.

All I can see is a blank page (easy to fix!)

If `tiki-index.php` fails complining about not being able to include "DB.php" then PEAR is not visible from your PHP installation, Tiki needs PEAR to use PEAR::DB, the database abstraction layer used in PHP. Find the "pear" directory

included in your PHP installation and make sure that you have that directory in the `include_path` in your `php.ini` file.

How to check if not finding PEAR is the problem:

Edit `tiki-db.php` and you will see `include('DB.php')` directive. Put a `die('before');` statement before that line and a `die('after');` statement after the line. Reload the page if you see 'before' but not 'after' then PHP is not finding PEAR on your installation.

PEAR is installed by default with all the PHP installations (Windows, Unix, etc) you don't have to change anything to make PEAR work but you do have to change things to break it. Usually the problem is that the PEAR directory is not in the `include_path` setting in `PHP.ini` some admins remove it because they don't know what it is.

If you don't want to user PEAR or you really can't make your system administrator make PEAR work you can try the following:

Uncomment line 4 (UNIX) or line 8 (Windows) of `db/tiki-db.php` and Tiki will use a bundled `PEAR::db` distribution. It will work.

I have problems uploading large files

Check the `upload_max_filesize` directive in your `php.ini`.

If you are using the database to store files (which is not a good idea for large uploads) you need to change the `max_allowed_packet` directive of your `mysqld` daemon, the limit is 1MB.

I get an error `open(temp\xsess_9818368762,O_RDWR)` error

I can't login

Tiki needs PHP sessions to run, check the `session.savepath` setting in `php.ini` and verify that it points to a valid directory where PHP can write files.

Everything work but uploads

Check if you have uploads enabled in `php.ini`, there's a configuration option to disable php uploads. Tiki uploads are 100% safe.

I get an error: Allowed memory size of XXX exhausted

I'm getting some bizarre errors

Your PHP installation is running out of memory, you should increase the maximum memory size for PHP scripts from the default 8Mb to 16Mb, put it in 24Mb if you want it is safe and memory will be used only if tiki needs it.

Tiki uses a lot of memory due to the inclusion of a large library this usually is not a problem for the server since the memory is freed immediately after and tiki is very fast generating pages. If you are still concerned just notice that each tiki version released needs less and less memory as we are factoring the large library in smaller libs to make Tiki more comfortable for our users.

I get the error: DB error connect failed

The settings in db/tiki-db.php are not configured. Edit that file and set up the hostname, uer, password and database name for your installation.

I get the error: unable to access templates_c/something.... warning/error fwrite() argument is not a valid resource...

Make sure the templates_c directory is created and that PHP can write to that directory.

I get the error: unable to access modules/cache/something.... warning/error fwrite() argument is not a valid resource...

Make sure the modules/cache directory is created and that PHP can write to that directory.

After installation

Initial Configuration

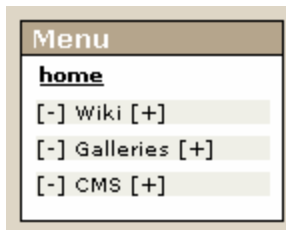
Once installed you are ready to configure Tiki to meet your needs, this is the initial screen that will be displayed when you access Tiki:

It is highly recommended to immediately change your admin password from the Admin screen after logging in.



Now you can see the HomePage of the Wiki (blank) and you can also see a new module on the left navigation bar displaying the admin menu.

The application menu is the first menu at the left sidebar:



The menu is divided in sections here (Wiki, Galleries and CMS), it can have many sections if you enable the different Tiki features from the Tiki admin screen. In order to use the menu you should use the [+] and [-] links to expand and collapse sections, if you click [+] in the Wiki section this is what happens. If you have cookies enabled the menu will remember its state as you navigate the application if not the menu will present all the sections closed each time you load a new page. To enable/disable features click the Admin link once logged as admin. The main admin panel will appear where a LOT of things can be configured. Read about the admin panel later in this manual to learn what you can do from there.



Now you can see the different links for the Wiki, use [-] if you want to close this section of the menu.

Clicking the "Menu" title will collapse/expand the whole menu if you want. Each section "name" links to the section home. Wiki will take you to the Wiki page named HomePage, Galleries will take you to the list of file galleries, CMS will take you to the articles home page and Blogs will take you to the list of blogs. Etc. The "home" link at the first line of the menu takes you to one of the many different sections that can be used as a HomePage, you can select which section will be used as

the HomePage from the admin screen, you can even set up any URL as home from the admin screen.

Tiki is now installed and ready to be configured and used, Jump to administration functions in order to learn how to configure users, groups, permissions, modules and features if you want.

Building your own menus

The Tiki application menu is automatically populated with the features that you have enabled and where the user has the right permission to access. But in some cases you don't want to use this menu because you don't like it or you want options in a different order, or something. Tiki incorporates a menu-builder tool where admins can create menus that can be used in Tiki for whatever you want, links to special sections of the site, links to external sites, any link can be used and there're three different menu-types that can be used. Read about this tool in the admin section of this manual: Menu builder.

Menus and some Opera versions:

It's been reported that menus don't work with some Opera versions, this is 100% an Opera bug and you should report it to the Opera team. If you do want to use that browser version to access tiki you will need to build a menu for your site using the menu-builder. Use a static menu type and it will work with Opera.

Tiki Sections:

Now we'll explain the most important Tiki features, from the user point of view and the admin point of view. Some sections require settings from the admin panel that will be explained later when explaining the admin panel. Tiki has more sections that are not immediately visible from the user point of view so we'll explain them in the admin section.

This part of the manual will include:

- The Wiki
- Image galleries
- The CMS system (articles, reviews, submissions, topics)
- Weblogs
- File galleries (downloads)
- Comments
- The search engine
- Featured links
- The My Tiki section
 - User preferences
 - Bookmarks
 - Module configuration
 - User notepad
 - Inter user messages
 - User files
 - Calendar
 - User tasks
 - User menus
 - Newsreader
 - Webmail
- Polls
- Categories
- Chat
- Forums
- Communications Center
- FAQs
- Quizzes
- HTML pages and dynamic pages
- Shout box
- Spell checking
- Drawings
- Surveys
- Trackers
- Newsletters

- Ephemerides

The Wiki

Configuring the wiki

The wiki is enabled from the main admin panel, in the features section. There's a wiki section in the admin panel that looks like this one:

Wiki settings	
Dumps: Generate dump Download last dump	Wiki Features: Sandbox: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Last changes: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Dump: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> History: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> List pages: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Backlinks: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Like pages: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Rankings: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Undo: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MultiPrint: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Comments: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spellchecking: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use templates: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Warn on edit: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 5 mins
Create a tag for the current wiki Tag Name: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="create"/>	
Restore the wiki Tag Name: <input type="text" value="pepe"/> <input type="button" value="restore"/>	
Remove a tag Tag Name: <input type="text" value="pepe"/> <input type="button" value="remove"/>	
Wiki comments settings Default number of comments per page: <input type="text" value="4"/> Comments default ordering: <input type="text" value="Points"/> <input type="button" value="Change preferences"/>	
Wiki attachments Wiki attachments: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use database to store files: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

You can configure several Wiki features here so we'll examine each feature in detail:

Configuring Wiki dumps

Dumps:
 Generate dump
 Download last dump

This section can be used to generate/download an XHTML

dump of your Wiki that can be used for offline browsing, distributing the Wiki in a CD offsite presentations etc.

Configuring Wiki tags

Create a tag for the current wiki
 Tag Name:

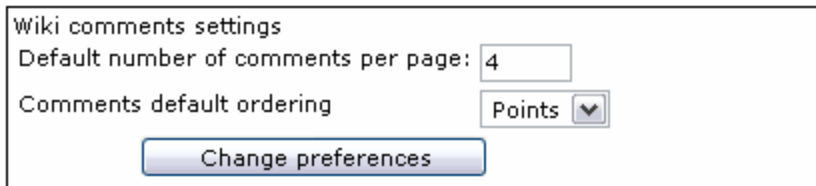
Restore the wiki
 Tag Name:

Remove a tag
 Tag Name:

A tag is a "mark" on the current state of the Wiki. They can be

used to save the wiki at regular intervals and the recover the whole Wiki to a particular state if something occurred. To create a tag simply enter a tag name and click the create-tag button. To restore a tag select one of the existing tags and click restore (all your wiki pages will be lost and the saved state for the wiki will be restored!). Since tags can take a lot of space you can remove tags that you don't want to use by clicking the remove tag button after selecting the tag that you don't want to use anymore.

Configuring Wiki comments



Wiki comments settings

Default number of comments per page: 4

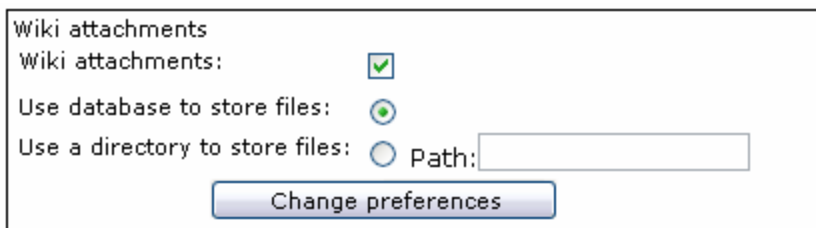
Comments default ordering: Points

Change preferences

Wiki pages can have comments, in this panel you can select the default number of comments to

view for Wiki pages and how comments will be sorted.

Configuring Wiki attachments



Wiki attachments

Wiki attachments: ☒

Use database to store files: ☒

Use a directory to store files: ☐ Path:

Change preferences

A wiki page can have attached files, in this panel you can setup if wiki attachments are allowed and where to store

attached files. You can store attachments in the database or a directory. The directory path can be absolute (Example: /foo/bar/uploads/) or relative to the Tiki directory (Example: files/) The trailing slash is mandatory.

IMPORTANT: Don't forget the trailing slash when configuring a path example: files/

Configuring other settings



Export Wiki Pages

Export

Remove unused pictures

Wiki Home Page: HomePage set

Wiki Page Names: strict set

The export panel can be used to export all your wiki pages to a PHPWiki

compatible format, then you can inport pages if you want. Each page is exported to a file where all the versions of the page are stored in a MIME format.

The remove unused pictures link can be used to remove all the pictures that are stored in the wiki pictures directory (img/wiki_up) but are no longer being used in any wiki page.

The wiki home page is used to setup the name of the page that will be the HomePage for your wiki.

The wiki Page names control can be used to control names of Wiki pages using the Wiki naming convention of Smashed words starting with capital letters (example: ThisIsSomePage) if strict only letters, numbers and ':' can form a name. If full accents and other characters can be part of Wiki names. Note that this does not affect the syntax ((page name)) where names can take any form.

Configuring wiki features

Wiki Features:	
Sandbox:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Last changes:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Dump:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
History:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
List pages:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Backlinks:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Like pages:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Rankings:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Undo:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
MultiPrint:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Comments:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Spellchecking:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use templates:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Warn on edit:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 5 mins
Pictures:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use page description:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Show page title:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Cache wiki pages:	0 (no cache)
Footnotes:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Users can save pages to notepad:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Users can lock pages (if perm):	<input type="checkbox"/>

This section can be used to configure Wiki features that can be enabled and disabled as follows:

Sandbox: If enabled the Sandbox page can be used to let users practice their wiki page editing skills. The Sandbox is a special page where everybody has write permission and no history is saved.

Last Changes: If enabled a screen to list the last changes to the wiki can be used.

Dump: If enabled dumps can be used.

History: If enabled users can see the history of

List Pages: If enabled users can see the list of wiki pages. Like a directory of wiki pages.

Backlinks: If enabled users can see backlinks to any page. A backlink is

a page that links to the page being browsed.

Undo: If enabled then the undo feature is on letting the user who last edited a page undo his edition.

Multiprint: If enabled a section is provided where a user can select several wiki pages and then view them in a printer-friendly version. This can be used to print multiple pages.

Comments: If enabled wiki pages can have comments.

Spellchecking: If enabled the spellchecker can be used for wiki pages.

Use templates: If enabled templates can be used to edit wiki pages, the user editing a page can select one of the templates available for Wiki pages and use it. See content templates to learn how to create templates for wiki pages.

Warn on edit: If enabled then the warn on edit feature is on. When a user is editing a page the edit button will be colored “red” and the name of the user editing the page will be displayed as a tooltip. If the user saves or cancels his edition or if the indicated amount of time passes the edit button will be displayed normally. This feature is useful to prevent collisions when editing pages.

Pictures: If enabled users can quickly-add an image to a Wiki page by simply uploading the picture when editing a page. The picture will be stored in `img/wiki_up` using the name of the picture as an Id.

Use page description: If enabled a description can be entered when editing a page and descriptions will be displayed below the page name when viewing a page.

Show page title: If enabled the page title will be displayed if disabled no title will be displayed. (and it will be hard to know what page you are editing!)

Cache wiki pages: If enabled then wiki pages can be cached, so the Tiki engine will not have to parse the page content to display it. After the indicated time passes or if the page is changed the cache is invalidated.

Footnotes: If enabled logged users can write personal footnotes when editing a page. The footnotes will be displayed only to the user who edited them immediately below the wiki page. This can be used as a good way to let users make personal notes and observations about pages.

Users can save to notepad: If enabled and if the users notepad feature is enabled and if the user is logged a “save” icon will be shown when viewing a page letting the user save the page to his personal notepad.

Users can lock pages: If enabled then users with permission to lock pages can lock pages and only the user who locked a page or admin can unlock it.

Table syntax: This selects the syntax to be used for tables. Can be || for new rows or \n for new rows. Examples

Using || for new rows
||r1c1|r1c2||r2c2|r2c2||

Using \n for new rows
||r1c1|r1c2
r2c1|r2c2||

Using the wiki

The Wiki is an environment where users can edit pages as they want adding information, links, lists and images that they find useful, you can use a Wiki as a feature of a users community, a club, a fan site, etc. The most important elements in the Wiki are the Wiki pages. The Wiki is the most important feature in intranets or collaboration webs.

Creating and Editing Pages



If you have the appropriate permissions you will see a menu at the bottom of pages with several options and one of them will be “edit”, when you click “edit” you are able to edit the page that you are watching, you can try editing a page and writing some text on it. Use the “preview” feature as many times as you need it before clicking “save”.

In order to create a new Wiki you should first generate a “reference” to the page from an existing page, Wiki automatically generates a reference when you write a word using Capitalized words smashed together, for example ThisIsMyPage or TennisResults or VisitLondon, when Tiki first sees a reference the page will display the name followed by a “?”, let’s see an example.

We’ll edit the home page.

Access the home page and click “edit” at the bottom of the page.

Edit: HomePage

Quicklinks	[b i u tbl a wiki h1 h2 h3 title box rss dcs cookie hr center col img] [chars]
categorize	[show categories hide categories]
Apply template	none 
Smileys	
edit	<div> <div>Welcome to the Home page</div> <div>Welcome to MyFirstPage</div> </div>
Comment:	<input type="text"/>
Allow HTML:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Spellcheck:	<input type="checkbox"/>
	<input type="button" value="preview"/>
	<input type="button" value="save"/> <input type="button" value="cancel edit"/>

The number of options and boxes when editing a page depends on the features enabled when configuring the Wiki.

Write some text making sure you use the word MyFirstPage, save the page using "save". Use the preview button if you want to preview how the page will look like once edited.

After saving you will see something like this:



As you can see there's a "?" question mark following MyFirstPage, this indicates that MyFirstPage is referenced from this page but has no content (it was never edited) so the "?" question mark is a link to "edit" the page. Click the question mark and edit the page.

Save the page using the save button and you will see:

Click the "home" option in the menu to return to the HomePage, this will be displayed:



As you can see MyFirstPage is now displayed as a link, if you click on it you will access MyFirstPage viewing the content you just edited.


This is how new pages are created and edited and how the Wiki is navigated, as you can see creating pages is really easy and that's why Wiki's are populated at a very high speed rate by their users adding pages and content as they need.

If you want to know what kind of features you can use when you edit a page visit the Wiki Tag System section where you will learn how to use titles, lists, images etc.

Viewing a Page

When browsing a wiki page a lot of information is displayed, the number of icons buttons and information depend on the options enabled for the Wiki. In this section we'll explain all the buttons and icons that can be used when browsing a Wiki page.

The screenshot shows a Tiki Wiki page titled "HomePage". The page content includes a description "This is the description", an example text "This is an example fsfsdfs", a bulleted list with items "One", "Two", and "Three", a link "link to some page?", and a text block "fsfsdfsdfsd sfdlkjfls". The page information section shows the last modification date as "Saturday 29 of March, 2003 [16:40:33 GMT] by admin". Below this is a table of attachments:

name	uploaded	size	dls	desc
 cord.png [x]	18/Feb [21:57 GMT] by admin	2814	0	gfx

Below the table is an "Upload file:" section with a text input, a "Browse..." button, a "comment:" label, and an "attach" button. At the bottom, there are links "(0 comments) [Show comments| Hide comments]" and a "Page bar" with buttons: "edit", "remove", "rename", "lock", "perms", "history", "similar", "undo", and "export".

Annotations on the right side of the image point to the following elements:

- Page title
- Page description
- Edit the Page
- Backlinks
- Print
- Save to user notepad
- Page data
- Footnotes
- Page information
- Page attachments
- Upload attachment
- Links to show comments
- Page bar

Understanding what each button does:

- **Print:** view a printer-friendly version of the page. If you want to print more than one page use the print feature in the wiki section of the application menu.

- Edit: edit the page
- Remove: remove the page
- Lock: lock the page
- Perms: set page permissions
- History: view the page history
- Backlinks: view pages that link to this page
- Save to notepad: saves the page to the user personal notepad.
- Similar: view pages similar to this one
- Undo: Undo last edit
- Rename: Rename the page
- Slides: View page as an slideshow see slideshows later
- Export: Export wiki page as text representation (can be used to import the page later)

So let's examine each option in detail.

Printable



This option will display a printer-friendly version of the page removing menus, sidebars, banners and all that kind of things. It should be nice to provide also a PDF version of each page and we are planning to add this feature in a

future version of Tiki –stay tuned-.

Edit

The Edit button takes you to the edit screen where you can edit Wiki Pages, since editing Wiki pages is the most important feature of the Wiki section we have a special dedicated section in this manual and you can find it after the rest of the page-bar options are explained.

Note: you can double-click on a page to edit-it if you want. If you don't like this feature and you are logged you can disable it from MyTiki->preferences.

Remove Page

Remove page: HomePage (version: last)

You are about to remove the page: HomePage permanently.

Remove all versions of this page: ☐

[remove](#)

The remove page option takes you to a page where confirmation is asked. In that page you can remove the

page and if you want you can also remove all the versions of the page. If you don't remove all the versions of the page the next-to-last version becomes the current page. Yes, you should use this feature carefully.

Lock

The lock/ unlock button is used to lock/unlock pages, when a page is locked nobody can edit the page when until it is first unlocked. This can be used to “lock” some pages that you don't want to be edited by anyone in open Wikis where everybody can edit pages, for example the HomePage in some Wikis.

If the users can lock pages feature is enabled then users with the right permission can lock/unlock pages and only the user who locked the page can unlock it (or admin) if the feature is not enabled then only admins can lock/unlock pages.

Example:



When the page is locked the locked icon will be displayed place the mouse over the lock icon to see who locked the page. If you have admin permission or you are the user who locked the

page (if user level locks are enabled) then an “unlock” button will be displayed at the page bar.

Permissions & email notifications

“Maybe you should read about the Tiki permission and groups system before reading this section”

Assign permissions to page: HomePage

Current permissions for this page:

group	permission	action
No individual permissions global permissions apply		

Assign permissions to this page

tiki_p_view ▼ to group: Registered ▼

Send email notifications when this page changes to:

add email:

Notifications:

In this page you can assign permissions to this page overriding the global Tiki permission system.

The way to use this screen is easy: select the permission you want to apply and then select the groups that will have the permission for **“this”** page. You can remove permissions clicking the remove link once a permission has been assigned.

If you set up the tiki_p_view permission for group “foo” only the users in the “foo” group will be able to view this page, other users won’t be able to see the page even if they have the tiki_p_view permission. (Of course users with tiki_p_admin are always enabled to do anything)

Notifications

From this screen you can also set email addresses that will be notified when a page changes, as an admin you may want to monitor some special or sensitive pages in your site, using this feature Tiki will send an email to the addresses configured here whenever the page changes.

History

History of: HomePage

<input type="checkbox"/> del	Date	Version	User	Ip	Comment	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	29/Mar [16:40 GMT]	11	admin	192.168.0.56		[current_version]
<input type="checkbox"/>	29/Mar [16:36 GMT]	10	admin	192.168.0.56		view rollback compare diff source
<input type="checkbox"/>	29/Mar [02:11 GMT]	9	155.210.68.147	155.210.68.147	updated by the phpwiki import process	view rollback compare diff source
<input type="checkbox"/>	29/Mar [02:11 GMT]	8	155.210.68.147	155.210.68.147	updated by the phpwiki import process	view rollback compare diff source
<input type="checkbox"/>	29/Mar [00:43 GMT]	7	admin	192.168.0.56		view rollback compare diff source

One of the most interesting features of the Wiki is that each time you edit a page the previous version is not discarded but stored in the history. If you have the right permissions you can view previous versions and rollback a page to a previous version if needed. This is how vandalizing is prevented/countered if a page is vandalized it will stay in that state only until a user restores a previous version.

In the history screen you can see all the page versions and if you have the right permissions you will see some options for each version, the options are:

- View: view any version of a page
- Rollback: rollback a page to any version
- Source: View the source of that page version
- Compare: compare the version and the current page side-by-side
- Diff: view a diff between any version and the current version

View

View will show you that version of the Page.

Remove

Marking versions and clicking the “del” button will remove the selected versions of the page from the history (if you have the permissions)

Compare

Comparing versions

Actual_version

Version:1

This is a test of a page written by me that has some bad text	This is a test of a page that has some nice text
--	---

Compare shows a side-by-side comparisson between the selected version and the current version.

Diff

Diff to version: 1

```
@@ -1,4 +1,4 @@
```

```
  This is a test
```

```
-of a page
```

```
+of a page written by me
```

```
  that has some
```

```
-nice text
```

```
+bad text
```

The diff tool computes a diff between the current version and any selected version in the history, the result is shown as in the figure, you can see what was removed, what was added and where from the old version to the current one. Some people like diffs and others prefer the side-by-side compare tool, you can use whatever you want or both.

Source

Shows the source of the selected version.

Rollback

Rollback is used to revert a page to a given version. You will be asked for confirmation before rolling back a page to a previous version.

The rollback option can be used if you don't like the current version of a page and want to switch to an older version, an alternative is to remove all the versions that you don't like until the desired version becomes the current one.

Note: If you want a feature to do a “massive” rollback of several pages you may want to read about “Tags”, you can find about tags in the Admin section.

Backlinks

backlinks to MyFirstPage:
[HomePage](#)

Backlinks are links from any page to the current page (the page you are reading), you can use the backlinks option to see which pages are linking to a particular page and find

“orphan” pages, pages with no backlinks. Orphan pages are likely to get very few visits if any and in many occasions orphan pages are old pages that were removed from the Wiki and you may need to delete them.

Similar Pages

Like pages show a listing of pages named similar to the current page. As you know a page is named using CapitalizedWordsSmashedTogether, “like pages” show pages where one of this smashed words is the same as one of the words in the current pages. For example “MyPage NFLResultsPage OpinionsPage” are similar because they share the word “Page”.

Undo

The undo button can be used to “undo” the last edition of a page, if the “undo” feature is enabled then users that can edit pages can undo what they did even if they can't rollback pages or remove versions. Note that users will be able to undo only what they edited and not what other users edited unless the user has permission to remove page versions.

Pressing the undo button removes the current version of the page making the last version in the history the current page, if no version is in the history then the page is reverted to an empty page.

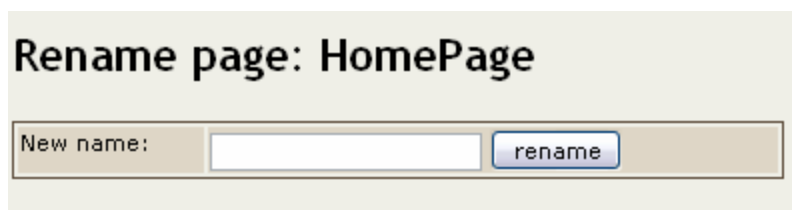
Slides

See the slideshows section in the Wiki syntax section just some pages ahead.

Export

The export button can be used to export the current version of the page, click it and your browser will prompt you to save the file. The exported page can later be imported to the wiki. If you want to export all the versions of a page you can use the export all versions link when editing the page (click the edit button and find the link). If you want to export all the versions of all the pages in the wiki you can do that as admin from the wiki section of the admin panel.

Rename



Rename page: HomePage

New name:

The rename button can be used to rename a Wiki page, all the references to that page will be updated as well.

Note that you must have a permission to rename pages.

Cached pages



HomePage

This is the description (cached)

This is an example
fsfsdfs

- One
- Two
- Three

link to some page?

If the wiki cache is enabled then cached pages will show a (cached) text besides the page description. A special icon is also

added to let the user force a refresh of the page if something that should be updated was not because the cached page is being displayed. The icon can be found at the top:



This icon can be used to refresh a cached wiki page.

Editing pages and the Wiki markup syntax

Editing pages is the most important feature of the Wiki. The edit screen allows you to edit a page, preview the page as many times as you want and then save it. To edit pages you use a special syntax common to many Wiki systems that is called “The Wiki Tag System”, this will allow you to use bold text, italics, images and many other things in your pages. If you have the permission you may also use regular HTML code in your Wiki pages thus permitting a page to be anything you want to be. IF you have permission to use HTML you should be able to see a checkbox labeled “Allow HTML” at the bottom of the page. The checkbox is enabled by default, if you uncheck it then HTML tags will be removed when saving the page.

Remember that you can edit a page by doubleclicking on the page.

The edit screen:

Edit: HomePage

Quicklinks:	[b] [i] [u] [tbl] [a] [wiki] [h1] [h2] [h3] [title] [box] [rss] [dcs] [cookie] [hr] [center] [col] [img] [chars]
categorize	[show categories] [hide categories]
Apply template:	none <input type="button" value="v"/>
Smileys:	
Description:	<input type="text" value="This is the description"/>
Edit:	<pre> This is an example fsfsdfs * One * Two * Three ((link to some page)) </pre>
Footnotes:	fsfsdfs

The edit screen is large so will describe each section as follow:

Quicklinks

Quicklinks: [b] [i] [u] [tbl] [a] [wiki] [h1] [h2] [h3] [title] [box] [rss] [dcs] [cookie] [hr] [center] [col] [img] [chars]

This links can be used to add special markup **at the end** of the page being edited. Unfortunately there's no way to insert markup at the cursor position so look for something added at the end of the page when clicking here.

Categorization

categorize [show categories] [hide categories]

This link can be used to categorize a page when the page is being edited. Click on show categories to display the box to add the page to categories.

This is the box that can be used to categorize the page select the categories where the page should be and remember to click

the categorize this object checkbox. The admin categories link takes you to the admin categories screen where new categories can be added.

Apply template

This part of the edit screen can be used to apply a template to the page. Note that the page content will be replaced completely by the template.

Templates can be defined using the admin content templates feature.

Description and edit

This section is used to edit the page description and the page content.

Footnotes

Footnotes:	fsfsdfsd sfdlkjfls
------------	-----------------------

Footnotes are personal notes for the user about the page, footnotes are displayed only if the content is non-empty and only to the user that created the footnotes. To remove footnotes simply remove the text from the footnotes box of the page. To add footnotes just type some text.

Comment

Comment:	
----------	--

The comment is information about what was done when editing the page, a sort of log of page editions.

Allow HTML

Allow HTML:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
-------------	-------------------------------------

If enabled then HTML is allowed in the page if not all the HTML markup will be removed.

Spellcheck

Spellcheck:	<input type="checkbox"/>
-------------	--------------------------

If enabled the page will be spellchecked and errors will be displayed in red when previewing the page.

Import and Export Page

Import page:	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/>	export all versions
--------------	---	---------------------

This section can be used to replace the page

by an imported page. Or to export all versions of this page to a text file. Note that if you want to export only the last version (current version) of the page the export button at the page bar should be used.

When importing versions in the imported dump will be added to the page history, old versions won't be lost. The last version in the imported dump will be made the current page version.

Upload picture



This box can be used to quickly add a picture to a Wiki page, the picture will be uploaded to

img/wiki_up and displayed in the page using the {picture} tag. By default pictures are added at the bottom of the page and you can then move the picture to any place in the page by moving the tag inserted for the picture. Use unique names that you can remember to prevent other users from overwriting your pictures. Once a picture is uploaded it can be used in more than one page just by copying the tag auto-inserted by tiki when uploading a picture.

The Wiki Tag System

The wiki-tag system is the "language" you can use when you edit wiki pages, there's a common set of features that are usually present at all wikis that Tiki maintains and some special features not frequently found in Wikis that Tiki adds.

You have a quick-reference to the wiki-tag system available at the bottom when you edit a page in the Wiki.

```
TextFormattingRules
Emphasis: " for italics, __ for bold, " __ for both
Lists: * for bullet lists, # for numbered lists, ;term:definition for definition lists
Wiki References: JoinCapitalizedWords or use ((page)) or ((page|desc)) for wiki references ))
SomeName(( prevents referencing
Drawings: "{draw name=foo}" creates the editable drawing foo
External links: use square brackets for an external link: [URL] or [URL|link_description] or
[URL|description|nocache].
Misc "!", "!!!", "!!!" make_headings, "----" makes a horizontal rule "===text===" underlines text
Title bar "-=title=-" creates a title bar.
Images "{img src=http://example.com/foo.jpg width=200 height=100 align=center
link=http://www.yahoo.com desc=foo}" displays an image height width desc link and align are optional
Non cacheable images "{img src=http://example.com/foo.jpg?nocache=1 width=200 height=100
align=center link=http://www.yahoo.com desc=foo}" displays an image height width desc link and align
are optional
Tables "||row1-col1|row1-col2|row1-col3||row2-col1|row2-col2col3||" creates a table
RSS feeds "{rss id=n max=m}" displays rss feed with id=n maximum=m items
Simple box "^Box content^" Creates a box with the data
Dynamic content "{content id=n}" Will be replaced by the actual value of the dynamic content block
with id=n
Colored text "~~~#FFEE33:some text~~~" Will display using the indicated HTML color
Center ":::some text:::" Will display the text centered
```

Normal text

```
Normal text is just entered as-is.
```

References to other wiki pages

References are created when you use capitalized words smashed together, if the page exists a link to the page will be shown, if not a link to edit the page will be displayed.

```
ThisIsaReference
```

You can prevent a name from being converted into a page using the following syntax

```
))ThisIsNotReferenced((
```

You can also use the following notation to create references to pages with any name you want:

```
((this_is_a_wiki_page))
```

If you want to enter a description for a wiki page use:

```
((this_page|This is the description))
```

Links to external wikis, inter-wiki links

As admin you can define sites that can be used as external wikis. From the admin menu click on the “External Wikis” link to get to this screen:

Admin external wikis

Create/edit extwiki

name:	<input type="text"/>
URL (use \$page to be replaced by the page name in the URL example: http://www.example.com/tiki-index.php?page=\$page):	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

extwiki

name	extwiki	action
DemoTiki	http://alt.thetinfoilhat.com/tiki-index.php?page=\$page	remove edit

In this screen you can add any number of “external wiki” sites, you have to enter a name (no whitespaces please) and the URL in the extwiki field the \$page special syntax must be used to place the name of the page in the URL.

Once the external wikis are setup you can use the syntax

```
((wikiName:PageName))
```

To link to an external wiki.

In our example (DemoTiki:HomePage) will be replaced by a link to
<http://alt.thetinfoilhat.com/tiki-index.php?page=HomePage>

Links to external pages

Links to external pages can be entered using one of the following formats:

```
[http://www.somesite.com]
[http://www.somesite.com|This is a nice site to visit]
[http://www.somesite.com|Hey|nocache]
```

VERY IMPORTANT: If you enable caching links to external pages please make sure to use the nocache directive when caching non-html pages, for example PDF docs, binary files or similar or the caching system may make the page crash with an ugly message. Tiki can't determine when a page is html or a large binary because it can be dinamically generated.

The first format will display the URL as a link while the second one will display the description as a link to the given URL. The third syntax can be used to prevent the link to the cache from being displayed in the page.

Tiki will automatically cache references to external pages or sites and a link to the cache will be displayed following the link, this is particularly useful when you link to notes or sections that may change or that may disappear in a near future. (Very similar to the google cache when you see the results of a search in google). You can disable caching pages from the admin screen.

Bold and italic text

Bold text can be entered using two underscores before and after the text.

```
__This is text in bold__
```

Italics are displayed using two quotes before and after the text

```
''this will be displayed in italics''
```

Underline

If you want to underline text you can use the following syntax:

```
===Some underlined text===
```

Colors

You can display text using any HTML color with the following syntax:

```
~~#FF00FF:This is some text~~
```

The color can be written in hexa as in the example or you can use a short name like “red”, “blue” and others (try them).

Centering text

If you want text to be centered you can use the following syntax:

```
::This text will be centered::
```

Lists

Bullet lists

Bullet lists are automatically created when you prefix a line of text with an asterisk "*" (as you do when using Word for example)

You can enter nested lists such as

```
* Ideas
** Idea 1
** Idea 2
* Things
** thing 1
** another thing
```

Numbered lists

Numbered lists can be entered prefixing each line in the line with a hash mark "#"

Numbered lists can be nested, for example

```
# Food
## Seafood
## Chicken
## Salads
### Caesar Salad
### House Salad
## Meat
# Drinks
## Alcoholic drinks
## Sodas
```

Definition lists

Definition lists can be entered using the following format:

```
;term1:definition1
;term2:definition2
```

```
etc...
```

Better definition lists can be created using the DL plugin (see wiki plugins ahead)

Monospaced text

Monospaced text can be used to show portions of code or text that needs to be properly aligned (ASCII art anyone?). To enter monospaced text prefix each line of text with a blank space. Lines starting with a blank are displayed in a courier monospaced font.

Using tables

You can create rudimentary tables using Tiki, a table can be entered using two alternative syntax formats that admin must choose.

If `||` is used to delimit rows

```
| | row1-column1 | row1-column2 | | row2-column1 | row2-column2 | |
```

If `\n` is used to delimit rows

```
| | row1-column1 | row1-column2  
row2-column1 | row2-column2 | |
```

You can colspan cells using

```
| | r1-c1 | r1-c2 | r1-c3 | | r1-c1c2c2 | | r1-c1 | c1-c2c3 | |
```

Note that colspanning is always produced at the last columns since the syntax is ambiguous.

Including images

Including drawings in your pages

You can include editable drawings in your pages using the following syntax:

```
{draw name=foo}
```

Note that you need a permission to be able to edit drawings, see more about drawings in the “drawings” sections.

Including images in your pages

Images can be included using regular HTML code if you have the permission or the Wiki syntax for images explained here:

Images can be included in a Wiki page using the following syntax

```
{img      src=http://www.something/image.jpg      width=100
height=100 desc=foo align=center link=http://site.com}
```

Where only src is mandatory and the rest of the attributes are optional. Note that you mustn't use quotes for the attribute values. The attributes are:

src	URL for the image
height	Image height
width	Image width
align	can be center, right or left
desc	Image description to be displayed below the image
link	an URL to make the image link to that URL

If you include an image from a URL Tiki will automatically "capture" the image and replace the link to an internal database-stored version of the image, that allows images to persist in the pages even if they are removed from the remote servers that originally had them. (You can disable this feature from the admin screen)

Important TIP : If you have the image cache enabled but don't want to cache some image (for example you want to display an image that changes along time) add a nocache option to the image src.

Example: value,param2=>value)}
content
{PLUGINNAME}
```

Example:

We may want to create a plugin to allow text formatting in any font and size:

```
{FONT(size=>20,face=>arial)}
some text
{FONT}
```

If a plugin doesn't require parameters you can use

```
{EXAMPLE()}
content
{EXAMPLE}
```

When Tiki finds a plugin the engine will look at the plugin name and look for the file

lib/wiki-plugins/wikiplugin\_name.php

For example

lib/wiki-plugins/wikiplugin\_font.php

That file should be a PHP file defining the function

```
function wikiplugin_font($data,$params) {
}

```

The function receives the plugin content in \$data and the parameters in the \$params associative array. The function manipulates the content and must return a string with the HTML that will replace the plugin content when rendering the wiki page (it can be just text if no HTML markup is needed).

This is an example: the example plugin:

```
function wikiplugin_example($data,$params) {
 extract($params);

 if(!isset($face)) {
 return ("missing face parameter for
plugin
");
 }
 if(!isset($size)) {
 return ("missing size parameter for
plugin
");
 }
}
```

```
$ret = "$data";
return $ret;
}
```

Downloading and installing wiki plugins.

Some plugins are distributed along with tiki in the lib/wiki-plugins-dist directory simply copy the plugin from this directory to lib/wiki-lugins to make them work. Plugins distributed from other sources should be downloaded and then copied to lib/wiki-plugins in order to activate them.

Plugins are a powerful tool these are some ideas for plugins:

- Display some language code highlighting it's syntax
- Display snippets of code
- Display poetry
- Display tetx using a special style
- Display charts, gauges.
- Show information from other sites.
- Etc etc etc

## Plugins distributed with Tiki

### AVATAR

The avatar plugin can be used to display the user avatar for any user. Example:

```
{AVATAR()}admin{AVATAR}
```

Can be used to display the avatar for the user: admin

### CODE

Code can be used to display snippets of code in wiki pages.

```
{CODE()}
<?php
function foo($foo) {
 print($foo);
}
```

```
?>
{CODE}
```

Will produce

```
<?php
 function foo($foo) {
 print($foo);
 }
?>
```

You can edit the plugin and change it if you don't like the look and feel of the output.

## INCLUDE

This plugin can be used to include the contents of a wiki page inside another page. Example:

```
{ INCLUDE (page=>HomePage) } { INCLUDE }
```

Note: If there's a cycle or of the page includes itself Tiki will crash so use this with discretion. Maybe this is only suitable for intranets where you know what you are doing.

## SQL

The SQL plugin is a powerful and interesting plugin that can be used to display select queries in your wiki pages. First of all you have to setup the databases that can be used in this plugin using the admin dsn feature. As admin click on admin dsn to enter this screen:

**Create/edit dsn**

name:

dsn:

**dsn**

| name | dsn                                | action      |
|------|------------------------------------|-------------|
| cosa | mysql://root:seldon@localhost/tiki | remove edit |

Page: 1/1

In this screen you can admin PEAR::Db DSNs that may be used from the SQL plugin, a DSN has to indicate the database type, the user, password, host and database name to be used.

You have to associate DSNs to some name that must not contain whitespaces. In this example we are creating a DSN for the database tiki in host localhost using user:root and password: seldon.

DSN format: database://user:password@host/database

When a DSN is created with name « foo » the permission tiki\_p\_dsn\_foo is automatically created, only users with that permission can use the DSN to create a query or view a query using that DSN.

|                          | name            | level  | type | desc                                              |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--------|------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_dsn_cosa | editor | dsn  | Can use dsn<br>mysql://root:seldon@localhost/tiki |

Once DSNs are created the following syntax can be used from the SQL plugin :

```
{SQL(db=>cosa)}
select login,email from users_users
{SQL}
```

Note: no colon at the end of the select

The result is a table with the select output:

| login   | email                |
|---------|----------------------|
| admin   | lrargerich@yahoo.com |
| pete    | pete@yahoo.com       |
| jljl    | a                    |
| a       | a                    |
| b       | b                    |
| das asd | a                    |
| prueba  | prueba               |
| papa    | lrargerich@yahoo.com |
| potato  | lrargerich@yahoo.com |
| bototo  | lrargerich@yahoo.com |
| nocho   | lrargerich@yahoo.com |

If you admin your database users carefully this plugin can be very useful mainly in intranets since you can access other databases, oracle bases, SQL server etc to display in your Tiki intranet site queries from other databases.

## CENTER

The center plugin can be used to center data in a wiki page.

```
{CENTER()}
data
```

```
{CENTER}
```

## DL

The DL plugin can be used to create definition lists

Example:

```
{DL()}
test: some test
bar: bar is not so nice
{DL}
```

Produces:

```
test
 some test
bar
 bar is not so nice
```

## GAUGE

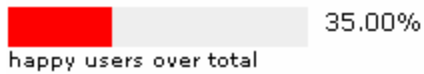
This plugin can be used to display graphical bars in a wiki page, the syntax is very flexible :

```
// Displays a graphical GAUGE
// Usage:
// {GAUGE(params)}description{GAUGE}
// Description is optional and will be displayed below the
// gauge if present
// Parameters:
// color bar color
// bgcolor background color
// max maximum possible value (default to for
percentages 100)
// value current value (REQUIRED)
// size Bar size
// perc If true then a percentage is displayed
// height Bar height
// EXAMPLE:
//
//
{GAUGE(perc=>true,value=>35,bgcolor=>#EEEEEE,height=>20)}happy users over total{GAUGE}
```

Example:

```
{GAUGE(perc=>true,value=>35,bgcolor=>#EEEEEE,height=>20)}happy users over total{GAUGE}
```

Produces:



## SPLIT

This plugin can be used to split a page in two columns using “---” as the separator:

Example:

```
{SPLIT()}
-=hey=-
one
two
three

-=hoy=-
foo
bar
test
{SPLIT}
```

Produces:

| hey   | hoy  |
|-------|------|
| one   | foo  |
| two   | bar  |
| three | test |

## WIKIGRAPH

Note: to generate graphs you must install graphviz if you use Windows make sure to copy the dot.exe and neato.exe files from graphviz to your windows/System32 or equivalent directory (it's not the same to put the files in the path). Graphviz can be downloaded from <http://www.research.att.com/sw/tools/graphviz/>

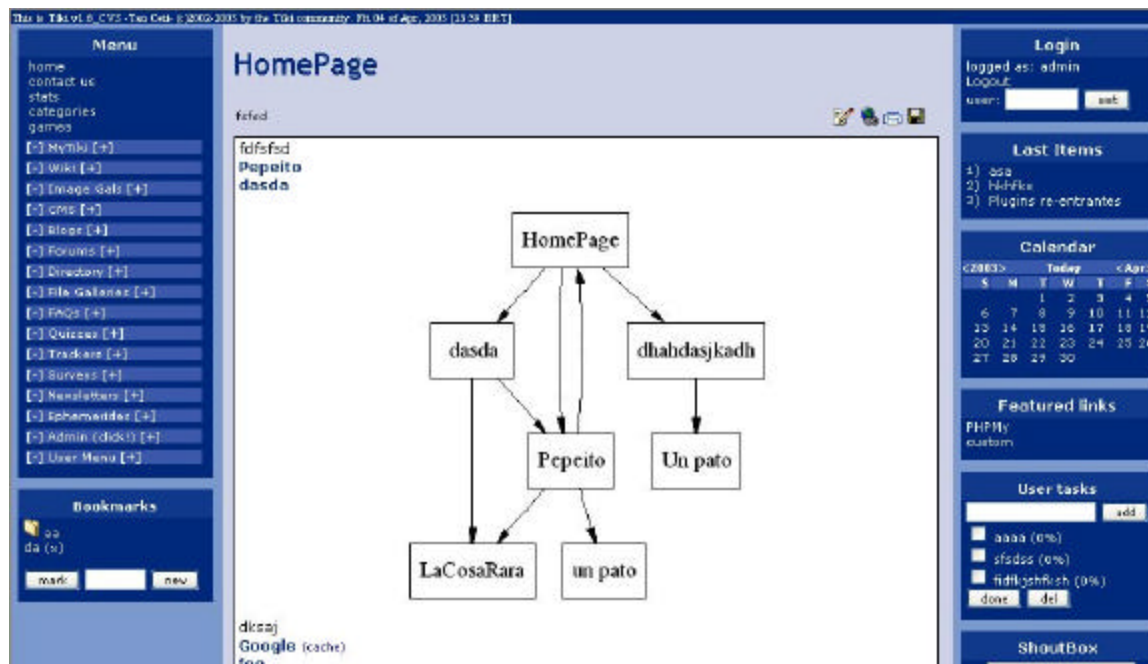
This plugin can be used to include a graph representing the links between wiki pages in any wiki page. The syntax is:

```
{WIKIGRAPH(level=>0)}PageName{WIKIGRAPH}
```

Where PageName is the name of the page to use as a starting point for the graph, if this is omitted the current page is used.

Level indicates the depth level of links to use, if level is 0 the graph shows the page and the pages that can be reached from the page, if level is 1 one more level of links is added, etc.

This is an example of the plugin in action:



Each node in the graph represents a Wiki page while each edge represents a link, nodes can be clicked to navigate to the selected page.

## Wiki handlers

You can also change the parsing process for Wiki pages (and other objects) by adding custom handlers to Tiki. A handler is a PHP function that receives a string and returns a modified string after doing something. There're two handlers that can be used in Tiki:

- preHandlers
- posHandlers

Pre handlers: Pre handlers are called before parsing Wiki markup.

Pos handlers: Pos handlers are called after parsing Wiki markup.

You can define handlers in the tiki-handlers.php file.

This is a silly example:

```
function foo($data) {
 return 'foo' . $data . 'foo';
}

$tikilib->add_pre_handler("foo");
$tikilib->add_pos_handler("foo");
```

Note that the add\_pre\_handler and add\_pos\_handler methods are used to add handlers to Tiki, they just receive the name of the function to be used as a handler, the functions can be defined in the same tiki-handlers.php file.

## Full HTML editing

If you are admin or if you have the proper permission you can use full HTML when you edit a Wiki page, normally you don't want regular users to use HTML since they can use wrong HTML, alter the page layout or break pages that's why the Wiki-Tag system exists. However for admins or trusted editors full HTML editing is a powerful way to make a page look exactly as you want. Whenever you edit a page containing HTML code make sure that the "Allow HTML" checkbox is checked or the HTML tags will be eliminated. IF you accidentally estroy a page that previously contained HTML don't worry just rollback the page to the previous version using the rollback button from the page history.

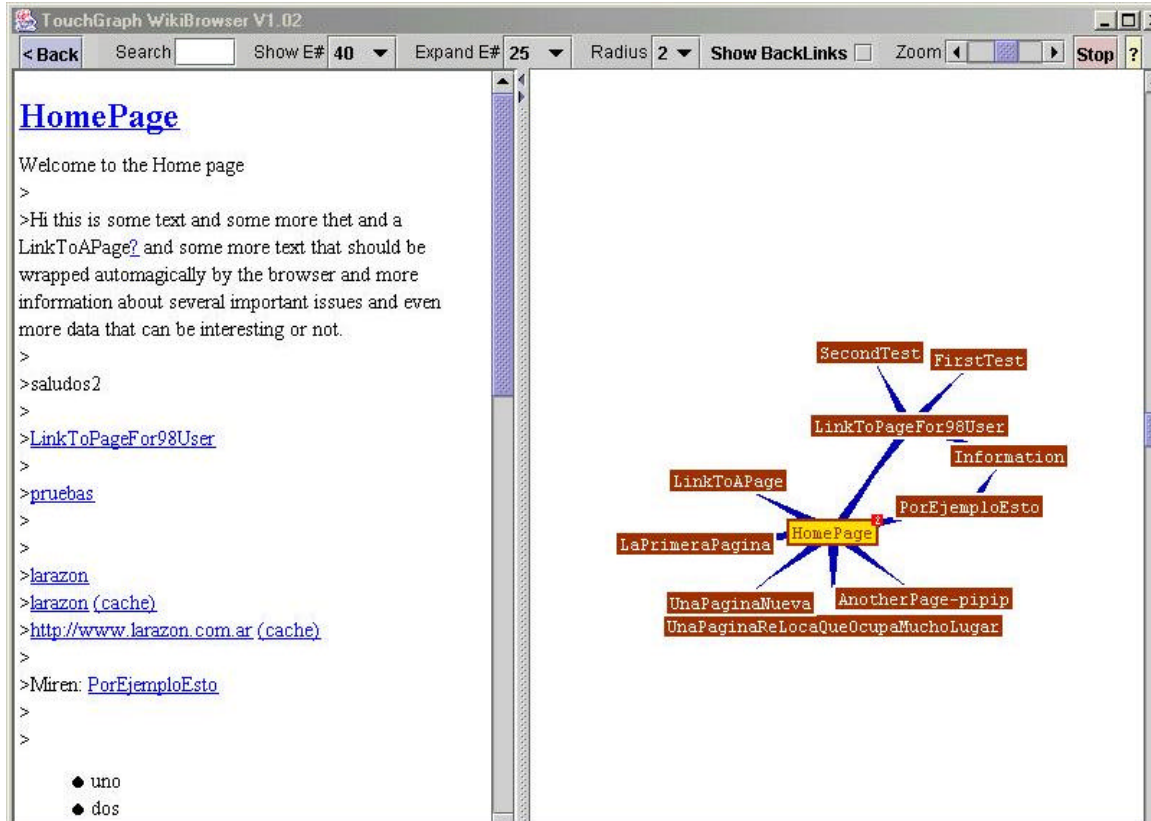
## *The Raw mode, using external Wiki visualization tools*

As you can see you use tiki-index.php?page=name to navigate wiki pages, you can also use the special raw mode using tiki-index\_raw.php?page=name instead of tiki-index.php. In raw mode all the layout elements as columns, bars and

decorations are removed and styles are not applied. This can be used as URLs that can be feeded into external wiki visualization programs.

## Using the Touchgraph wiki browser

The touchgraph wiki browser is a nice application that can be used to view a graphical representation of the Tiki wiki.



At the right side you can see a graph representation of the wiki and at the left side the current page, you can navigate the graph clicking on the nodes or clicking on the normal links at the left side.

To use Touchgraph you need:

- Download and install the touchgraph wiki browser from <http://touchgraph.sourceforge.net> or from the plugins section at the tiki site (<http://tikiwiki.sourceforge.net/plugins.html>) it is recommended to download Touchgraph from the tiki site since that distribution has a batch file ready for Tiki sites.
- Touchgraph is Java application if you don't have Java in your machine download a Java environment from <http://www.sun.com/>

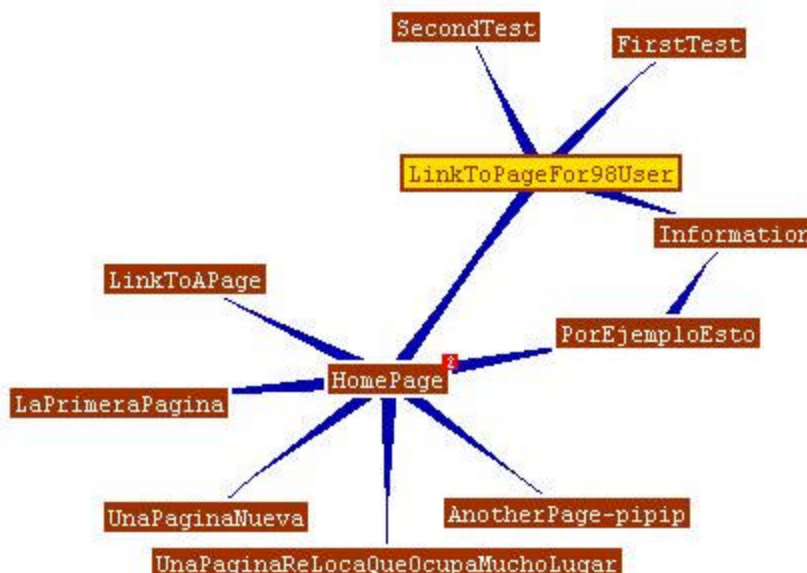
Once you have touchgraph installed (just unzip the distro to some directory) edit the file tiki.bat (or meatball.bat) if you don't have tiki.bat and you will see something like the following:

```
java -cp TGWikiBrowser.jar;BrowserLauncher.jar com.touchgraph.wikibrowser.TGWikiBrowser
http://localhost/tiki/tiki-wiki_link_structure.php
http://localhost/tiki/tiki-index_raw.php?page= HomePage 2 false
```

The last 5 parameters are the ones that will be configured to use Tiki, and explained as follows:

- The name of a .txt file with the wiki link structure of a URL to get the link structure, you should use [http://yoursite.com/tiki/tiki-wiki\\_link\\_structure.php](http://yoursite.com/tiki/tiki-wiki_link_structure.php) to get the live link structure of your site
- The URL to browse the wiki, use [http://yoursite.com/tiki/tiki-index\\_raw.php?page=](http://yoursite.com/tiki/tiki-index_raw.php?page=) (the pageName will be added automatically by Touchgraph)
- The name of the starting page for example HomePage (or whatever you want)
- The number of levels to expand 2 is a good value you can experiment other values
- Whether backlinks are displayed or not in the graph (false/true)

Launch the batch file and you will be able to graphically browse your Wiki!



## Special Pages

There're two kinds of "special pages" where rules for editing and permissions are different than for regular pages:

## The SandBox

We already mentioned the SandBox, the SandBox is a practice arena were users can practice their editing skills.

The special rules for the SandBox are:

1. everybody can edit edit the SandBox bypassing permissions.
2. No versions of the SandBox will be stored, the page cannot be deleted, or rolled back.

You can enable/disable the SandBox from the admin screen.

## Personal User Pages

Each user with a login name and password in Tiki has its own personal page named "UserPage*name*" where name is the user login, for example "UserPageMitch003". The personal user page is a special page in the Wiki since only admins or the user can edit the page even if anonymous users can edit the page. This is an easy way to provide users with a personal page to start publishing their interests, the personal page will be always editable only by the user so the user can be sure that he can publish there without others changing or modifying the content.

## Dumping the Wiki link structure

The Wiki in Tiki offers you a way to dump the link structure of pages in the wiki, the dump will be a regular txt file with Unix line feeds where each line represents the link leaving a page. In order to get the link structure for the wiki you have to use the following URL:

`tiki-link_structure.php`

This will produce an output similar to the following one:

```
AnotherPage HomePage AnotherSuperPage AnotherPage HomePage HomePage AnotherPage-pipip LaPrimeraPagina LinkToAPage LinkToPageFor98User
PorEjemploEsto UnaPaginaNueva UnaPaginaReLocaQueOcupaMuchoLugar Information LaPrimeraPagina LastTest LinkToPageFor98User FirstTest HomePage
Information SecondTest NuevoInvento PorEjemploEsto Information SandBox UnaPaginaNueva UnaPaginaReLocaQueOcupaMuchoLugar UnaPaginaReNueva
```

Now what can you do with this? Well the most interesting use is feeding some utility with the "live" link structure of the Wiki to get a graphical representation of

pages. You can build your own graphical rendering routine or application or use an existing utility such as the Touchgraph Wiki browser.

## Wiki page descriptions

This is an optional feature, to make it work you should enable descriptions in the wiki section of the main admin panel.

If enabled then you will see a text input to let you enter a description for wiki pages when editing a page.





[SCREEN DESCRIPTION]

Descriptions are displayed immediately below the page name when browsing a page and they will also be displayed as the link "title" when you include a reference to the page in another page.

[SCREEN reference with description]

## Wiki file Attachments

If you enable wiki file attachments and If you have the permissions you will be able to see a list of attached files for wiki pages. You can also see a box to upload a new file if you have the permission to attach files to wiki pages.

| name                                                                                                      | uploaded                   | size | dls | desc            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|------|-----|-----------------|
|  <b>some.zip</b> [x]   | 10 of Dec [19:19] by admin | 7762 | 0   |                 |
|  <b>tiki.jpg</b> [x]   | 10 of Dec [18:08] by admin | 7615 | 1   | da              |
|  <b>google.png</b> [x] | 10 of Dec [18:07] by admin | 492  | 1   | Google png logo |
|  <b>tiki.jpg</b> [x]   | 10 of Dec [17:58] by admin | 7615 | 2   | tiki            |

Upload file:   comment:

Registered users are allowed to remove files they uploaded (so they can maintain an attachment without duplicating it).

|                |
|----------------|
| [-] Wiki [+]   |
| home           |
| last changes   |
| dump           |
| rankings       |
| list pages     |
| orphan pages   |
| sandbox        |
| print          |
| send           |
| received pages |
| structures     |

## Wiki Menu

Now let's examine the options available in the Wiki Menu:

- Home (go back to the Wiki HomePage)

- Last Changes (see last changes)
- Rankings (see several rankings)
- Dump (download a dump of the wiki)
- List Pages (listing of wiki pages)
- Orphan pages (listing of orphan pages)
- Sand Box (test page to practice editing skills)
- Print (used to print multiple pages)
- Send is used to send Wiki pages to other sites
  - Received pages shows a list of pages received from other sites and you will be able to edit/remove/accept them
  - Structures can be used to define “structures” of wiki pages.

Note: All the features can be enabled/disabled from the admin menu. Click on admin and then go to the wiki section of the admin panel to configure your wiki features and options.

## Last Changes

The last changes screen can be used to see what happened to the Wiki recently (or not so recently), as you can see the information is displayed in a tabular way indicating for each change the page and action, the user that changed the page an Ip for that user and the comment (if entered).

### Last Changes

[Today] [Last 2 days] [Last 3 days] [Last 5 Days] [Last Week] [Last 2 Weeks] [Last Month] [All]

Find

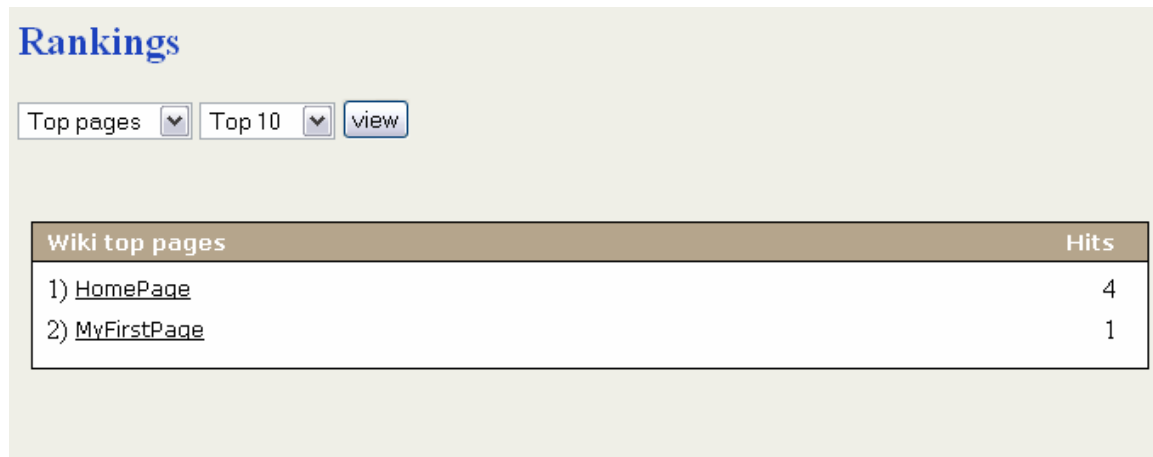
| Date                            | Page            | Action  | User  | Ip           | Comment |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|---------|-------|--------------|---------|
| Fri 03 of Jan, 2003 [18:44 ART] | <b>ahskdha</b>  | Updated | admin | 192.168.0.56 |         |
| Fri 03 of Jan, 2003 [18:38 ART] | <b>ahskdha</b>  | Created | admin | 192.168.0.56 |         |
| Fri 03 of Jan, 2003 [18:37 ART] | <b>HomePage</b> | Updated | admin | 192.168.0.56 |         |

Page: 1/3 [\[next\]](#)  
[1](#) [2](#) [3](#)

In our example you can see that we updated “HomePage” and then we created “MyFirstPage”. While this screen can be used by anyone wanting to see what

happened recently it is also a great tool for admins to check what is happening in the Wiki without having to check if page. The links above the table allows you to select the period of time you want to cover. Pagination is used so clicking “all” want destroy the server but you may have to navigate a lot of pages.

## Rankings



Rankings

Top pages ▼ Top 10 ▼ view

| Wiki top pages                 | Hits |
|--------------------------------|------|
| 1) <a href="#">HomePage</a>    | 4    |
| 2) <a href="#">MyFirstPage</a> | 1    |

The rankings screen can be used to see several “charts” or rankings about the Wiki, you have to select the ranking you want to see from the select box and you can select if you want to see the Top 10, 20, 50 or 100 results. Clicking “view” displays the ranking. The rankings that you have available may depend on the Tiki version you are using since one of the things that we may add in new versions is new rankings. Check it out!

## Dump

The Dump link is a link to a Dump of the Wiki (if the Dump was created from the admin screen) this will download a .tar file containing a xhtml representation of the pages in the Wiki.

## List Pages

## Pages

Find

| Page                                           | Hits | Last mod                        | Last author                  | Last ver | Com                         | Status   | Vers | Links | Backlinks | Size |
|------------------------------------------------|------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|----------|-----------------------------|----------|------|-------|-----------|------|
| <a href="#">WikiWikiWeb</a><br>(edit)          | 3    | Thu 12 of Dec, 2002 [16:31 ART] | The PhpWiki programming team | 1        | created from phpwiki import | unlocked | 0    | 5     | 7         | 847  |
| <a href="#">WikiPlugin</a><br>(edit)           | 2    | Thu 12 of Dec, 2002 [16:31 ART] | The PhpWiki programming team | 1        | created from phpwiki import | unlocked | 0    | 15    | 3         | 2533 |
| <a href="#">WikiInformacion(...)</a><br>(edit) | 8    | Tue 17 of Dec, 2002 [16:13 ART] | 155.210.68.145               | 1        | created from phpwiki import | unlocked | 0    | 5     | 1         | 490  |

Page: 1/33 [\[next\]](#)
[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#) [32](#) [33](#)

This screen will show you a list of the Wiki pages with some interesting information about pages such as number of visits (hits), who was the last user that edited the page, number of versions in the page. Links found in the page and the size in bytes. This listing can be ordered by any column clicking the column title, note that if you relick the same column the order is reversed. This behavior is the same in all the listings in Tiki so we should remark it.

Note: In all the Tiki listings if the column title is a link you can click it to make the listing appear ordered by the selected column, to reverse the order just click again on the column title.

## Sand Box

## Edit: SandBox

The SandBox is a page where you can practice your editing skills, use the preview feature to preview the appearance of the page, no versions are stored for this page.

|                |                                                                                                                  |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Quicklinks     | [b] [i] [u] [tbl] [a] [wiki] [h1] [h2] [h3] [title] [box] [rss] [dcs] [cookie] [hr] [center] [col] [img] [chars] |
| categorize     | [show categories] [hide categories]                                                                              |
| Apply template | none ▼                                                                                                           |
| Smileys        |                                |
| edit           | <div> <div>fdsfsdf __fsdfsdfs__</div> <div></div> </div>                                                         |
| Allow HTML:    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                                                                              |
| Spellcheck:    | <input type="checkbox"/>                                                                                         |
|                | <input type="button" value="preview"/>                                                                           |
|                | <input type="button" value="save"/> <input type="button" value="cancel edit"/>                                   |

If enabled from the admin screen there will be a special page in the wiki named "SandBox" the SandBox behaves like a normal page with the following exceptions:

1. everybody can edit edit the SandBox bypassing permissions.
2. no versions of the SandBox will be stored, the page cannot be deleted, or rolled back.

The SandBox is useful as a practice page where users can practice their editing skills and get used to the WikiTiki editing syntax. Many wikis offer a SandBox as a way to get familiar with the Wiki.

## Orphan Pages

The orphan pages listing will list all the Wiki pages that are not linked from any other page, in many situations this can be correct, for example the home page may not be linked, personal user pages may not be linked, pages that are linked directly from a customized home page or menus or modules may not be linked etc.

In some other cases this listing can be used to detect pages that are dangling in the Wiki and you may want to remove them or add a link to the page from other pages if you want.

## Orphan Pages

Find

| Page                                                         | Hits | Last mod                       | Last author | Last ver | Com | Status   | Vers              | Links | Backlinks         | Size |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------|--------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----|----------|-------------------|-------|-------------------|------|
| <a href="#">UnaPaginaReNueva</a><br>( <a href="#">edit</a> ) | 2    | Wed 09 of Oct, 2002 [15:31:17] | admin       | 1        |     | unlocked | <a href="#">0</a> | 0     | <a href="#">0</a> | 5    |
| <a href="#">SandBox</a><br>( <a href="#">edit</a> )          | 2    | Wed 06 of Nov, 2002 [17:56:44] | prueba      | 1        |     | unlocked | <a href="#">0</a> | 0     | <a href="#">0</a> | 20   |

Page: 1/1

## Print

The print feature can be used to obtain a printable representation of not one but many Wiki pages (as many as you want). The following screen can be used to select which pages will be printed:

## Print multiple pages

Filter

filter:

Print Wiki Pages

Pages: UserPages HomePage

HomePage

▼

add page

clear

print

Select the pages you want using the combo, if the combo has just too many pages to handle it use the filter box above to restrict the number of page names

that will be offered as options. Add as many pages as you want and then click the print button.

The result can be something like this:

## Wiki Pages

### UserPages

## User Pages

Welcome to the user pages, you can edit this page and you can create links to pages that you want to edit from this page use this space to express yourself or write anything that you want about Tiki.

[ThisIsAnExample?](#)

---

### HomePage

## Welcome to the Wiki!

The Wiki is a collaborative environment where the users can read the pages they are viewing. HTML is not allowed in Wiki pages but a specific Wiki syntax can be used to display information.

You can see a demo of the Wiki syntax features in the [WikiSyntaxDemo](#) page, if you want to practice before editing pages you can use the [UserPages](#) where everybody can edit.

In this demo site you can try editing Wiki pages starting with the [UserPages](#) page, this Wiki Home page is locked so you can't edit and we can't edit it either, everybody reads the instructions as they are.

You can save or print the result, remember that the result is to be printed, not used, the links won't work if this is saved as a local html page.

## Structures

Structures can be used to group wiki pages in a structure. Structures are trees of Wiki pages. Pages belonging to a structure are displayed with a navigation bar to the next and previous page in the structure. Furthermore a {toc} tag can be used to display a Table of contents for a structure in any page belonging to the structure.

Clicking on structures will take you to the page where structures are created and edited.

## Structures

### Create new structure

|                                             |                      |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| name:                                       | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Submit Query"/> |                      |

|                  |
|------------------|
| <b>Structure</b> |
| <b>Example</b>   |
| <b>Un pato</b>   |

In this screen you can create a new structure or edit an existing structure. The name of each structure is also the name of a Wiki page if the Wiki page doesn't exist it will be created when creating the structure.

When editing a structure the screen will be like the following one:

### Structure: Example

Admin structures

|                                       |                                          |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| In parent page                        | Example                                  |
| After page                            | La cosa <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| create page                           | <input type="text"/>                     |
| <input type="button" value="create"/> |                                          |

### Structure

Example [view|edit]

- 1 Introduction [x] [view|edit]
  - 1.1 Intro 1 [x] [view|edit]
  - 1.2 dda [x] [view|edit]
    - 1.2.1 ds [x] [view|edit]
    - 1.2.2 aa [x] [view|edit]
- 2 La cosa [x] [view|edit]

The form at the top can be used to add pages to the structure, the parent page is the page that will be the parent of the page you will be adding, to change the parent page click on any page on the structure tree displayed below. Once the parent is selected choose a page and add a new page after that one.

Example: to create the structure displayed in this example we did:

1. create structure example
2. parent example create page introduction
3. create page La cosa
4. change parent to introduction
5. create page intro 1
6. create page dda
7. change parent to dda
8. create page ds
9. create page aa

Names in the structure are names of wiki pages, when a page is created in the structure the wiki page with the corresponding name is also created.

You can view/edit wiki pages from the structure tree or you can remove pages. If you click “x” to remove a page the system will ask if you want to remove the page from the structure or if you want to remove the page completely.

You will remove aa and its subpages from the structure, now you have two options:

- Remove only from structure
- Remove from structure and remove page too

Note that if the page being remove has subpages all the subpages will be removed recursively from the structure. (They will also be remove to the system if you choose the remove page too option)

When viewing a page belonging to a structure navigation links are displayed at the top.

## Example

| Example                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Introduction >> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <div style="margin-bottom: 10px;">dsds</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 Introduction               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1.1 Intro 1</li> <li>• 1.2 dda                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1.2.1 ds</li> <li>• 1.2.2 aa</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• 2 La cosa</li> </ul> |                 |

Last modification date: Thursday 09 of January, 2003 [12:20:16 GMT] by admin

The links can be used to go to the top of the structure (the page with the same name as the structure) or to the next/prev page in the structure. In this example the {toc} wiki tag is used to display a table of contents for the structure.

Note that the {toc} tag can be used to create Table of contents for sub pages (or chapters)

Example:

**dda**

|            |         |       |
|------------|---------|-------|
| << Intro 1 | Example | ds >> |
|------------|---------|-------|

fsdfsf  
sfsdfs

- 1 ds
- 2 aa

fsfsfsdd

Last modification date: Monday 24 of February, 2003 [13:13:37 GMT] by admin

In our example structure the page dda has two subpages: ds and aa, so the {toc} tag will display links to the “ds” and “aa” pages from the doc page.

Structures are very useful for grouping Wiki pages, they can be used for documentation, manuals, FAQs, HowTos, etc.

When a structure is created a “slides” button will be displayed in the page bar allowing you to view the structure as a slide-show!

## Permissions for the Wiki

If you want to configure the permission system for the Wiki you will be able to set the following permissions for groups:

|                                     | name                          | level      | type | desc                                   |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------|------|----------------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_edit                   | basic      | wiki | Can edit pages                         |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_view                   | basic      | wiki | Can view page/pages                    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_remove                 | editors    | wiki | Can remove                             |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_rollback               | registered | wiki | Can rollback pages                     |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_admin_wiki             | editors    | wiki | Can admin the wiki                     |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_wiki_attach_files      | basic      | wiki | Can attach files to wiki pages         |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_wiki_admin_attachments | editors    | wiki | Can admin attachments to wiki pages    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_wiki_view_attachments  | basic      | wiki | Can view wiki attachments and download |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_upload_picture         | basic      | wiki | Can upload pictures to wiki pages      |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | tiki_p_edit_structures        | editors    | wiki | Can create and edit structures         |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | tiki_p_rename                 | editor     | wiki | Can rename pages                       |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | tiki_p_lock                   | editor     | wiki | Can lock pages                         |

The tiki\_p\_admin\_wiki permission is a master permission that automatically includes the other 4 permissions that can be set for the Wiki.

## The Wiki mail-in feature

The wiki mail-in feature can be used to setup email accounts that can be used to read write and modify wiki pages. As admin click on the Mail-in link in the admin section of the application menu to get to the mail-in admin section.

## Mailin accounts

Mailin

### Add new mail account

|                                    |                                                               |      |                                  |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------|
| Account name                       | <input type="text"/>                                          |      |                                  |
| POP server                         | <input type="text"/>                                          | Port | <input type="text" value="110"/> |
| SMTP server                        | <input type="text"/>                                          | Port | <input type="text" value="25"/>  |
| SMTP requires authentication       | Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input checked="" type="radio"/> |      |                                  |
| Username                           | <input type="text"/>                                          |      |                                  |
| Password                           | <input type="password"/>                                      |      |                                  |
| Type                               | <input type="text" value="wiki-get"/>                         |      |                                  |
| Active                             | Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No <input type="radio"/> |      |                                  |
| <input type="button" value="add"/> |                                                               |      |                                  |

### User accounts

| account | type |
|---------|------|
|---------|------|

In this screen you can set-up mail accounts indicating the POP3 server, the SMTP server and the user-password to be used, it's like any normal email configuration tool with the addition that you can indicate the type of mail account to set-up there're four types of accounts.

- wiki-get
- wiki-put
- wiki-append
- wiki

### wiki-get accounts

When an email is sent to the account indicating in the subject the name of a Wiki page Tiki will answer the email sending the wiki page to the sender.

### wiki-put accounts

When an email is received indicating the name of a wiki page in the subject the body of the email will be used to overwrite the wiki page indicated.

## wiki-append accounts

When an email is received indicating the name of a wiki page in the subject of the email the wiki page is appended with the data in the body of the email.

## wiki-accounts

Wiki accounts can be used to GET, PUT and APPEND wiki pages, the body of the email is the page content, the subject is used to indicate what to do.

```
GET:pageName
PUT:page Name
APPEND:pageName
```

## Image Galleries

Image Galleries are collection of images, if you have the right permission you will be able to create galleries and upload images to the galleries.

### *The galleries menu*



This is the menu that is displayed when you expand the Image Galleries section in the main menu. There're three options in the menu: Galleries, Rankings and Upload Images (options may change depending on your permissions). We are going to examine each option in

detail.

### *Galleries*

The galleries screen will display a list of all the Tiki Image Galleries available and if you have the right permissions a link to create a new gallery and links to edit/remove/browse etc listed galleries if you have the permission.

Note that all galleries can be accessed by all users, there's not a way to make a gallery only accesible by some users, don't include private photos in a gallery unless you can accept that everybody can see the images. There's no thing such a "private gallery". You can control who can create or edit galleries but not who can "view/browse" a gallery.

If you are following the manual your first visit to the Galleries screen will display no records.

## Galleries

### Available Galleries

create new gallery

Find

| Name             | Description            | Created                 | modified              | User  | Imgs | Visits | Actions                       |
|------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-------|------|--------|-------------------------------|
| <b>My photos</b> | A collection of photos | 12 of Nov, 2002 [11:57] | Tue 12 of Nov [11:57] | admin | 0    | 0      | Edit Remove Upload List perms |

### Creating a gallery

If you click in the "create gallery" link a screen with a form to create a new gallery will be displayed:

## Galleries

Create or edit a gallery using this form

|                                                |                                     |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Name:                                          | <input type="text"/>                |
| Description:                                   | <input type="text"/>                |
| Gallery is visible to non-admin users?         | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Max Rows per page:                             | <input type="text" value="10"/>     |
| Images per row:                                | <input type="text" value="6"/>      |
| Thumbnails size X:                             | <input type="text" value="80"/>     |
| Thumbnails size Y:                             | <input type="text" value="80"/>     |
| Other users can upload images to this gallery: | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <input type="button" value="edit/create"/>     |                                     |

The fields are explained in the following table:

The fields are described as follow:

| Field                                         | Description                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name                                          | The gallery name                                                                                                          |
| Description                                   | The gallery description                                                                                                   |
| Gallery is visible to non-admin users         | If not set then the gallery will be visible only to users with the tiki_p_admin_galleries permission set.                 |
| Max Rows per page                             | Maximum number of rows of thumbnails that will be displayed when someone visits the gallery.                              |
| Images per row                                | Maximum number of thumbnails per row when visiting the gallery.                                                           |
| Thumbnails size X                             | Width for Thumbnails                                                                                                      |
| Thumbnails size Y                             | Height for Thumbnails                                                                                                     |
| Other users can upload images to this gallery | If checked then other users can upload images to your gallery, they won't be able to delete images or change the gallery. |

Create a gallery for testing if you want, we'll use it in the next sections.

# Galleries

## Available Galleries

create new gallery

Find

find

| Name             | Description            | Created                 | modified              | User  | Imgs | Visits | Actions                       |
|------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-------|------|--------|-------------------------------|
| <b>My photos</b> | A collection of photos | 12 of Nov, 2002 [11:57] | Tue 12 of Nov [11:57] | admin | 0    | 0      | Edit Remove Upload List perms |

After creating a gallery you can see the options you have in the listing (again options may vary according to permissions), the whole package of options is:

- Edit: edit the gallery information
- Remove: remove the gallery
- Upload: upload images to the gallery
- Browse: browse the gallery (click on the gallery name)
- List: gallery listing
- Configure individual permissions for the gallery (if admin)

## Edit

Edit will allow you to edit the gallery using the same form you used to create the gallery, you can change the gallery information here, size of thumbnails, etc. Note that changin the size of the thumbnails doesn't actually rebuild the thumbnails, you must use the rebuild thumbnails option when browsing the gallery to rebuild them.

## Remove

Remove will remove the gallery and all the images in the galleries, this won't ask for confirmation, all the galleries and images will be gone so use it very carefully.

## Upload

This option will take you to the upload image screen that is explained later.

## Browse

The browse option (clicking on the gallery name) can be used to browse the gallery, when you browse a gallery you will see thumbnails for the gallery images. We'll show you an example of browsing a gallery after we explain how to upload images to the gallery.

## List

List is a non-graphical representation of a gallery instead of thumbnails for each image you will see a listing with one row per image, if you want to delete images or take a quick-look at a gallery content without viewing the images you may want to use "list" instead of "browse" since listing is faster than browsing the gallery.

## Upload Image

The Upload image screen let's you upload images to galleries.

**Upload Image**

|                                                                       |                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Image Name:                                                           | <input type="text"/>                                          |
| Image Description:                                                    | <input type="text"/>                                          |
| Gallery:                                                              | My photos ▼                                                   |
| <b>Now enter the image URL or upload a local image from your disk</b> |                                                               |
| URL:                                                                  | <input type="text"/>                                          |
| Upload from disk:                                                     | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| Thumbnail (optional, overrides automatic thumbnail generation):       | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| <input type="button" value="upload"/>                                 |                                                               |

The fields are self-explanatory, note that you have to select a gallery where the image will be uploaded, you can upload images to galleries you created or public galleries created by other users(!).

There're two ways to upload images: entering the image URL or uploading an image from your disk, the upload screen admits both formats but you should use only one method for each image. (If you enter a URL you don't have to upload and if you upload you don't have to enter a URL). If you use both then the result is unpredictable.


Optionally you can also upload a thumbnail for the image, if you don't upload a thumbnail Tiki will auto-generate a thumbnail using a reduced version of the uploaded image, if you don't like how Tiki generates thumbnails or if you want to provide your own thumbnails or if you want thumbnails different than the full image you should upload a thumbnail along with the image.

If everything goes fine the image will be uploaded and you will see the image and the thumbnail displayed.


For example:

**Upload succesful!**

**The following image was succesfully uploaded:**



Thumbnail:



You can view this image in your browser using:  
[http://luigi.melpomenia.com.ar/tiki/tiki-browse\\_image.php?imageId=2](http://luigi.melpomenia.com.ar/tiki/tiki-browse_image.php?imageId=2)  
You can include the image in an HTML/Tiki page using ``

The image was uploaded and stored into the Tiki database!

You will see the image, the thumbnail and information about how to browse the image and how to include the image in an HTML page or a Wiki page. Keep this links in mind since you may want to upload some images to a gallery that can later be used in your Wiki pages or in your Blog posts. Uploading images to a gallery is a nice way to keep images stored in the Tiki system so they won't fail if a site that held them goes offline or removes the images.

If you see the thumbnail with the same size as the image then: if the image was a GIF file this is normal, don't worry, if the image is not a GIF your PHP installation doesn't have the GD extension or the GD extension is too old, in such a case thumbnails will be generated resizing the original image.

### **Uploading Images reminder:**

Note: You can upload images to:

- 1) Galleries created by you
- 2) Public galleries (galleries with the public option set)

### ***Batch upload***

If you have the right permission you will be able to do batch upload of images. To do this just upload a .zip file containing the images you don't need to enter a name or description. The name of each image will be the filename and the description will be blank (you can edit it later if you want).

Note that this feature should not be permitted to normal users only admins or people administering image galleries. If everybody can do batch uploads there's

### ***Browsing galleries***

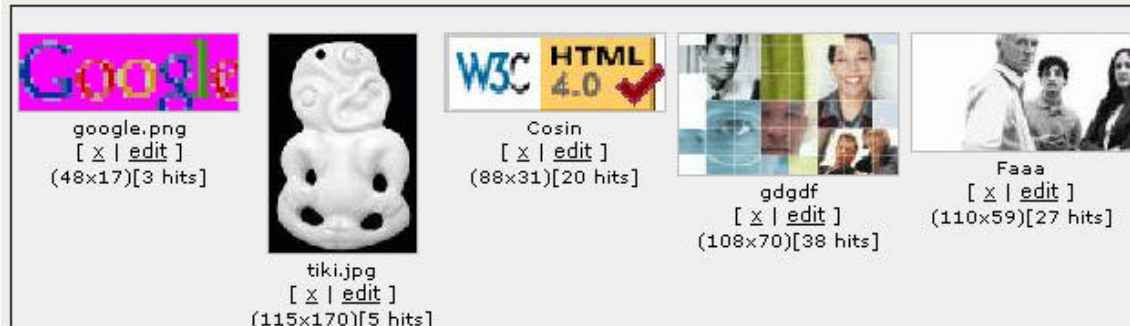
Once you have some images uploaded you may want to browse the gallery you created:

## Browsing Gallery: Prueba gal

[ [edit gallery](#) | [rebuild thumbnails](#) | [upload image](#) | [list gallery](#) | [RSS](#) ]

Prueba gal

Sort Images by [ [Name](#) | [Date](#) | [Hits](#) | [User](#) | [Size](#) ]



Page: 1/1

(0 comments) [ [Show comments](#) | [Hide comments](#) ]

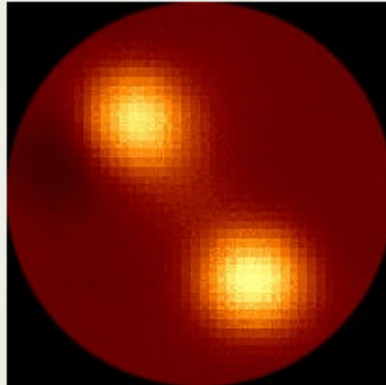
The browse gallery screen displays the thumbnails, the gallery description and links to edit the gallery, rebuild the thumbnails and upload images (if you have the right permissions). The [x] link can be used to remove an image from the gallery if you want.

There're options to sort the images in the galleries by Name, Date, Hits, Size and User if you want a different order (clicking the link again will reverse the ordering)

For each image a thumbnail is displayed showing the image title, it's size and the number of hits (a hit is computed each time the image is browsed). If you click on the image you will browse the image:

## Browsing Image: fd

[return to gallery](#)



[\[ next image \]](#)

|              |                                                                            |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Image Name:  | fd                                                                         |
| Created:     | Tuesday 12 of November, 2002 [12:06:33]                                    |
| Hits:        | 3                                                                          |
| Description: | fd                                                                         |
| Move image:  | <input type="text" value="My photos"/> <input type="button" value="move"/> |

You can view this image in your browser using: [http://luigi.melpomenia.com.ar/tiki/tiki-browse\\_image.php?imageId=2](http://luigi.melpomenia.com.ar/tiki/tiki-browse_image.php?imageId=2)

You can include the image in an HTML or Tiki page using ``

In the browse image screen you will see the full image, the image information, an option to move the image to another gallery (if you have permission) and the information on how to link to browsing the image or how to display the image in an HTML page or a Wiki page, an article or a Blog.

You will also see links to the next/prev image in the gallery to browse all the gallery images if you want.

### Individual permissions for image galleries

From the gallery listing screen if you have the right permissions you will see a link labeled “perms” this link can be used to set-up individual permissions for an image gallery:

## Assign permissions to gallery My photos

[back](#)

### Current permissions for this object:

| group                                              | permission | action |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------|--------|
| No individual permissions global permissions apply |            |        |

### Assign permissions to this object

[assign](#)  to group:

When you assign a individual permission for a gallery the individual permissions will override the global permissions system and only the users that have the permission for the individual gallery can view/edit/upload to the gallery. This feature can be used to configure private galleries, paid galleries or galleries where only a special group of users can upload images for example.

## Rankings

### Rankings

| Wiki top images         | Hits |
|-------------------------|------|
| 1) <a href="#">test</a> | 4    |

The rankings screen for image galleries is similar to other ranking screens you can select the ranking to show, the number of results to display and clicking the “view” button will display the Ranking.

## The System Gallery

As you already know if enabled from the admin screen Tiki can capture images referenced from other sites/URLs storing them in the Tiki database. Those images will be stored in a special gallery called “The system gallery” if you are

admin you can browse the system gallery and check what images are stored there, and if you want you can also remove images (if they are no longer referenced from user pages). A feature to automatically remove orphan images (images not being used in any page) will be added to future Tiki versions.

## ***Image galleries permissions***

The following are the permissions you can set for image galleries:

|                                     | name                        | level      | type            | desc                             |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_admin_galleries      | editors    | image galleries | Can admin Image Galleries        |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_admin_file_galleries | editors    | image galleries | Can admin file galleries         |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_create_galleries     | editors    | image galleries | Can create image galleries       |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_upload_images        | registered | image galleries | Can upload images                |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_view_image_gallery   | basic      | image galleries | Can view image galleries         |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_batch_upload_images  | editors    | image galleries | Can upload zip files with images |

The tiki\_p\_admin\_galleries is a “master” permission that automatically includes the other 3 permissions for image galleries.

## **Articles, Reviews and Submissions**

Articles and submissions are the most important part of the Tiki CMS system, with the articles and submissions system you can build the basement for a site like those constructed using other CMSs systems like PHPNuke or Postnuke with all the advantages that Tiki has. Basically there're three structural components for the CMS system: Topics, Articles and Submissions.

Articles and submissions are classified in topics, you can edit topics from the admin topics screen:

## Topics

### Admin Topics

#### Create a new topic

|                                    |                                                               |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name                               | <input type="text"/>                                          |
| Upload Image                       | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| <input type="button" value="add"/> |                                                               |

#### List of topics

| name | Image                                                                             | Active? | Action                  |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------------------------|
| Tiki |  | y       | Remove Deactivate perms |

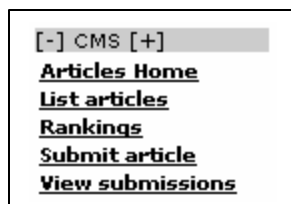
In this screen you can add and remove topics or you can activate/deactivate topics without removing them. You can also click the perms link to assign permissions to the topic. The permissions for topic works as follows:

If no permission is assigned to the topic then everybody can read articles or reviews in this topic.

If the tiki\_p\_read\_topic permission is assigned for the topic only the groups with the permission can view the topic and other users won't see content in the topic (Articles, reviews,etc). This can be used to manage private topics that only users in some groups can read.

## Articles and reviews

The Articles menu:



As a user this is a simple menu, you can visit the Articles Home, you can see a list of articles, you can see the Rankings, send a submission or view active submissions. Of course what you can or can't do and what you see in this menu is configurable.

If you are admin click the “Edit article” link in the admin menu to enter a new article.

## Editing Articles

This is the screen where you can edit and existing article or create a new article, we'll examine each field in detail:

|             |                      |
|-------------|----------------------|
| Title       | <input type="text"/> |
| Author Name | <input type="text"/> |
| Topic       | Tiki                 |
| Type        | Article              |

Title is the article title, AuthorName is the name of the author as it will appear in the article (you can use any name here). Topic is the topic where the article will belong, if you don't see options in the select box for topics then

you must first create a topic, use the admin topics link in the admin menu to create a topic and then go back to the edit article screen. Type is the type of article to use if the article is a review then you will be able to add a rating to the article.

Reviews:

|        |        |
|--------|--------|
| Type   | Review |
| Rating | 7      |

## Images:

Articles can have an associated image, if you want your article to have an associated image you can upload an image using the Own Image field. By default the article will display the topic image (each topic has an image), if you want the

article to display it's own image instead of the topic image check the "Use own image" checkbox. If you are using the article image you may want to check the size that you will like for the image.

The heading and the body are self explanatory, note that you can use the Wiki Tag System here as if you were editing a Wiki Page, read about the Wiki Tag System if you didn't. If you want to use HTML in the article make sure that the

AllowHTML option is checked at the bottom.

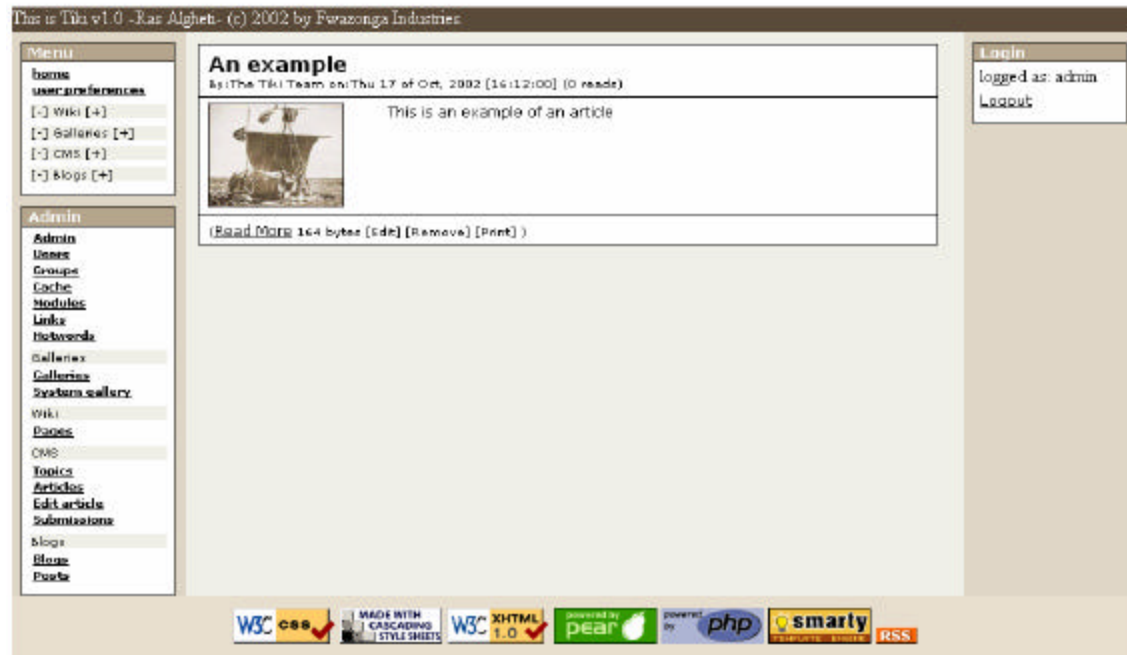
At the bottom set the publishing date for the article and verify the

Allow HTML option (if you have permissions), use the preview feature as many times as you want to preview the article and then click save.

We entered a sample article to show you the Articles Home page.

## ***Articles Home***

The Articles Home displays the last "n" articles of the CMS system, "n" can be configured from the admin menu, this page can be set up as the Tiki Home Page from the admin screen if you want to use Tiki as if it were a normal CMS system.



You will see each article displayed showing the heading and a link to read more where you can read the whole article:



## List Articles

The list articles section shows a list of articles.

## Articles

[edit article](#) [view articles](#)

| Find       | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="find"/> |               |       |      |        |        |       |                                                                  |
|------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|-------|------|--------|--------|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Title      | Topic                | PublishDate                         | AuthorName    | Reads | Size | HasImg | UseImg | User  | Action                                                           |
| An example | Tiki                 | Thu 17 of Oct, 2002<br>[16:12:00]   | The Tiki Team | 1     | 164  | n      | n      | admin | <a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Remove</a> <a href="#">Read</a> |

Page: 1/1

You can sort the list by any column, you can filter articles containing some word and if you have the permissions you will see options to edit, read or remove the article. This screen is useful for administrators as well as regular users.

## Rankings

### Rankings

Top articles  Top 10

| Wiki top articles             | Reads |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| 1) <a href="#">An example</a> | 1     |

In the Rankings page you will access to rankings for the CMS system such as Top Articles, Top Authors, etc. You have to select the ranking to display and the number of records to display and click the view button to see the ranking.

## Submit Article

This is Tiki v1.0 -Ras Algheti- (c) 2002 by Fwazonga Industries.

**Menu**  
[home](#)  
[user preferences](#)  
[\[-\] Wiki \[+\]](#)  
[\[-\] Galleries \[+\]](#)  
[\[-\] CMS \[+\]](#)  
[\[-\] Blogs \[+\]](#)

**Admin**  
[Admin](#)  
[Users](#)  
[Groups](#)  
[Cache](#)  
[Modules](#)  
[Links](#)  
[Hotwords](#)  
[Galleries](#)  
[Galleries](#)  
[System gallery](#)  
[Wiki](#)  
[Pages](#)  
[CMS](#)  
[Topics](#)  
[Articles](#)  
[Edit article](#)  
[Submissions](#)  
[Blogs](#)  
[Blog](#)  
[Posts](#)

**Edit:**  
[list submissions](#)  
Title   
Author Name   
Topic   
Own Image    
Use own image ☐  
Own image size x   
Own image size y   
Heading

**Login**  
logged as: admin  
[Logout](#)

Submitting and article is the same as editing an article with the difference that the result will be stored as a submission and not published immediately as an article. The process to edit and send a submission is the same as editing and article so you should read about editing articles if you haven't to find out.

## View Submissions

# Submissions

[edit submission](#)

Find

| Title     | Topic | PublishDate                       | AuthorName | Reads | Size | Has Img | UseImg | User  | Action                                                              |
|-----------|-------|-----------------------------------|------------|-------|------|---------|--------|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Something | Tiki  | Thu 17 of Oct, 2002<br>[16:21:00] | Foo        | 0     | 6    | n       | n      | admin | <a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Remove</a> <a href="#">Approve</a> |

Page: 1/1

You will a list of submissions and if you have the permissions yoy may see links to edit, remove or approve a submission. Once a submission is approved it becomes an article.

## Permissions for articles and submissions

The following permissions can be configured for articles and submissions:

|                                     | name                      | level   | type | desc                    |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|---------|------|-------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_edit_article       | editors | cms  | Can edit articles       |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_remove_article     | editors | cms  | Can remove articles     |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_read_article       | basic   | cms  | Can read articles       |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_submit_article     | basic   | cms  | Can submit articles     |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_edit_submission    | editors | cms  | Can edit submissions    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_remove_submission  | editors | cms  | Can remove submissions  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_approve_submission | editors | cms  | Can approve submissions |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_admin_cms          | editors | cms  | Can admin the cms       |

The tiki\_p\_admin\_cms permission is a “master” permission that automatically includes the other 7 permissions in this listing. You can use it to have a group of users that can admin the whole articles/.submissions system without the need of assigning each permission to the group.

## The Blog System

Blogs are a very hot topic in the web lately, basiccaly a blog is a collection of posts, a blog can be set up as a personal Journal for a user, a set of reviews of movies, comments about sites, news about a product, world news, whatever.

The Tiki Blog system is quite powerful, let’s take a look at the menu for blogs in the main menu:



There’re four options in this menu: List blogs, Rankings, Create/Edit Blog and Post. We’ll examine each option in detail next.

### Create/Edit Blog

So you want to set up your personal Journal in the web, you should then create a new weblog, the screen will display a form as the following.

## Edit Blog:

[list blogs](#)

Title

Description

Number of posts to show

Allow other user to post in this blog ☐

You must enter a title for the Blog, a description, the maximum number of posts to show per page and you have to indicate if you will allow other users (any users) to post entries into this weblog. Normally blogs are private for the user that created the blog but sometimes you may want to allow other users to post entries, you can delete the entries if you don't want them later.

Once a blog is created you can start "posting" to the weblog.

## List Blogs

### Blogs

[edit blog](#)

Find

| Title                 | Description                | Created                 | Last Modified         | User  | Public | Posts | Visits | Activity | Action                 |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-------|--------|-------|--------|----------|------------------------|
| <b>This is a blog</b> | This is a test of a weblog | 12 of Nov, 2002 [12:17] | Tue 12 of Nov [12:17] | admin | n      | 0     | 0      |          | Post Edit Remove perms |

In this screen you will see a list of available blogs, if you have the right permissions you may see links to post, edit, remove or read a weblog. Remove will remove the whole weblog and all it's posts so use it very carefully. Perms can be used (if admin) to set individual permissions for a weblog.

## Post



The screenshot shows the 'Edit Post' interface. At the top, the title 'Edit Post' is displayed in a large blue font. Below the title, there are two links: 'view blog' and 'list blogs'. The 'Blog' field is a dropdown menu currently set to 'My Journal'. The 'Data' field is a large, empty text area for entering the post content. At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: 'preview' and 'save'.

Posting is how weblogs are populated when you post you have to select which weblog to use (you will see all your weblogs plus public ones available) and you enter the weblog entry. As you can imagine you can use the Wiki Tag System to edit weblog entries and you can use regular HTML too. Since weblogs are normally private initiatives by users HTML is always allowed, if you break your own weblog then it will be your problem.

After posting or clicking a read link in the blog listing or by a link you can “read” a weblog:

## Reading a weblog

## Blog: My Journal

Created by admin on Thu 17 of Oct, 2002 [16:42:03]  
 Last modified Thu 17 of Oct, 2002 [16:45:39]

(1 posts | 0 visits | Activity=2.00) [\[Post\]](#) [\[Edit\]](#)

Description: This weblog shows what I do everyday.

Find:  [find](#) Sort posts by: [Date](#)

**Thursday 17 of October, 2002 [16:45:39]**

[\[Edit\]](#) [\[Remove\]](#)

This is my first post

Page: 1/1

When you read a weblog you will see all the posts for today or the previous days, you can navigate the posts using the next/prev buttons at the bottom of the page or you can use the calendar module if enabled to browse posts for any given day.

The read screen will display information about the weblog such as number of posts, visits, activity rate and last modification date and if you have the permissions it will display links to post or edit the weblog.

There's a find button that let's you search for posts containing some specific information.

For each post if you have the permission you will see links to edit the post or remove the post.

### ***Setting individual permissions for a weblog***

Clicking the "perms" link from the weblog listing will take you to a page where you will be able to configure individual permissions for the weblog.

## Assign permissions to blog This is a blog

[back](#)

### Current permissions for this object:

| group                                              | permission | action |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------|--------|
| No individual permissions global permissions apply |            |        |

### Assign permissions to this object

[assign](#)  to group:

Individual permissions , if set, will override the global permissions set for weblogs, this can be used to set-up private weblogs in your site.

## Rankings

### Rankings

[view](#)

| Most visited blogs            | Hits |
|-------------------------------|------|
| 1) <a href="#">My Journal</a> | 1    |

The rankings screen for weblogs displays several rankings and charts about the weblogs, you should select the ranking and the number of positions to show and then click the “view” button.

## Using Desktop Applications for your Blogs



blogs.

One of the great features of Tiki is that it implements the XMLRPC API of blogger, a popular blogger with a lot of tools and users in the market. This API is used by several windows applications that can be used to manage your weblogs, any application implementing the Blogger XMLRPC API can be used to edit Tiki

Note: The XMLRPC feature should be enabled from the admin screen to make this programs work, the feature is disabled by deafult so if you are admin and want to use Desktop programs for blogs please enable the feature.

## Using wBlogger

In this section we'll introduce wBlogger a very nice application to manage blogs that can be used to manage Tiki blogs, note that this is not the only application that can be used, any application that you like implementing the Blogger XMLRPC API can be used.

## Installing wBlogger



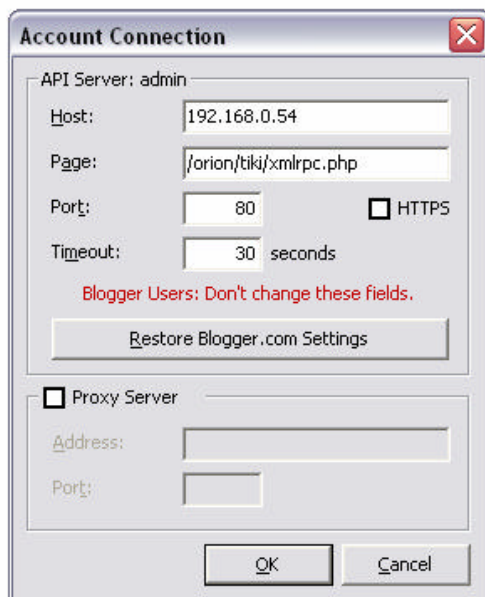
wBlogger is one of the nice applications you can use to edit Tiki weblogs, wBlogger can be downloaded from: <http://wblogger.com/>. The application is a normal windows application that has a installer, once installed you should configure blogger to access the Tiki database.

## Setting up your account



This is the first screen displayed when you start wBlogger: In this screen you should enter your tiki username and password as you use it in Tiki. Then once in the wBlogger application you should enter file->account\_connection and configure the Tiki server:

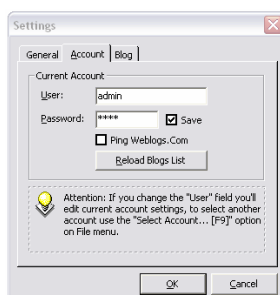
## Setting up the Tiki server



Enter the Tiki IP address or the tiki hostname (for example [www.mytiki.org](http://www.mytiki.org)) in the Host field. Then enter the path to the xmlrpc.php file that is distributed within tiki in the “Page” field, for example: /tiki/xmlrpc.php if you installed Tiki at the Document Root of your server. , the port should normally be 80 unless you changed it and the timeout can be left in 30 seconds. If everything is ok you are ready to use wBlogger to edit Tiki weblogs!

## Getting list of available blogs

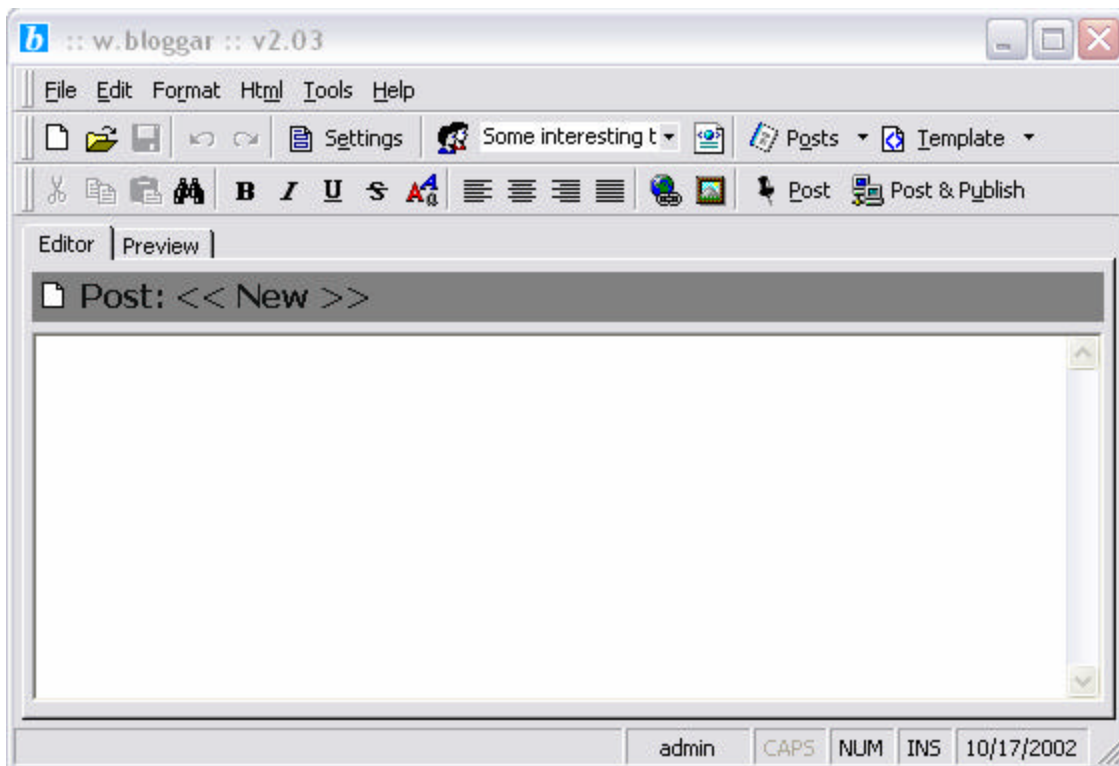
Now go to file->settings->account and you will see:



Click the reload blog list button to get a list of available blogs where you can post. Once the list is loaded from the server you are ready to use wBlogger.

## Using wBlogger

This is the main screen of wBlogger:



You can select the blog that will be used at the top (next to settings), you can send posts, edit posts, remove a post, preview posts and do anything that you want. Note that you can also store posts in your local disk and post them when you want. All in one wBlogger is an excellent companion to Tiki blogs that you can use to manage your blogs in any way that you want.

As an example select a blog, enter some text and post it, if everything goes fine you will see the post in your Tiki weblog (!!)

### ***Permissions for the blog system***

The following permissions can be set for weblogs:

|                                     | name                | level      | type  | desc               |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|------------|-------|--------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_create_blogs | editors    | blogs | Can create a blog  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | tiki_p_blog_post    | registered | blogs | Can post to a blog |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_blog_admin   | editors    | blogs | Can admin blogs    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_read_blog    | basic      | blogs | Can read blogs     |

The tiki\_p\_blog\_admin permission is a master permission that automatically gives the group the other 3 permission for weblogs.

## File Galleries



If you enable the file galleries section from the admin menu you'll see a menu section in the main menu for file galleries. From the menu according to the permissions you have you will be able to list existing file galleries (where you can create a new gallery) or upload a file to a gallery.

A file gallery is just a collection of files that can be downloaded, files are kept in the Tiki database and the number of downloads for each file are registered.

The List galleries option in the main menu will take you to the following screen:

### *Listing file galleries*

## File Galleries

### Available File Galleries

[create new gallery](#)

| Name   | Description                   | Created                        | Last modified                  | User  | Files | Hits | Actions                                                                                 |
|--------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------|-------|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sample | An example of a file gallery. | Mon 28 of Oct, 2002 [14:13:35] | Mon 28 of Oct, 2002 [14:13:35] | admin | 0     | 0    | <a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Remove</a> <a href="#">Upload</a> <a href="#">List</a> |

From this screen you can create a new gallery, edit existing galleries, remove existing galleries, upload a file to a gallery or list the contents (files) of an existing gallery. The options you see as a user depend on the permissions the admins have set for your groups.

## ***Creating file galleries***

To create a new file gallery click the “create new gallery” link and the following form will be displayed.

**Create or edit a file gallery using this form**

|                                               |                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name:                                         | <input type="text"/>                                              |
| Description:                                  | <input type="text"/>                                              |
| Gallery is visible to non-admin users?        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                               |
| Max Rows per page:                            | <input type="text" value="10"/>                                   |
| categorize                                    | <input type="button" value="[show categories  hide categories]"/> |
| Other users can upload files to this gallery: | <input type="checkbox"/>                                          |
| <input type="button" value="edit/create"/>    |                                                                   |

The same form is displayed to edit an existing gallery, you have to fill the gallery name, a description and the maximum number of rows (files) that will be displayed for each page in the file gallery listing.

You can make a gallery invisible to normal users unchecking the “gallery is visible to non-admin users” checkbox. This can be used to set-up galleries that can’t be browsed but contain files that you will make available for downloading in your site using direct links to download the file.

If you want to allow uploads to this gallery from other users check the checkbox above the edit/create button. If the checkbox is not checked then only the gallery creator or admins can upload files to the gallery.

## ***Uploading files***

To upload a file you use the following form:

## Upload File

Browse gallery

|                                       |                                                               |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| File Title:                           | <input type="text"/>                                          |
| File Description:                     | <input type="text"/>                                          |
| File Gallery:                         | cosa <input type="button" value="v"/>                         |
| Upload from disk:                     | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| Batch upload                          | <input type="checkbox"/>                                      |
| <input type="button" value="upload"/> |                                                               |

In this form you enter a title and description for the file, the gallery where the file will be stored and then the file from your local disk to upload. If everything goes well you will see a message indicating that the file was uploaded.

### Upload succesful!

**The following file was succesfully uploaded:**

putty.exe (225280 bytes)

You can download this file using: [http://luigi.melpomenia.com.ar/tiki/tiki-download\\_file.php?fileId=1](http://luigi.melpomenia.com.ar/tiki/tiki-download_file.php?fileId=1)  
 You can include the file in an HTML/Tiki page using `<a href="http://luigi.melpomenia.com.ar/tiki/tiki-download_file.php?id=1">putty.exe (225280 bytes)</a>`

### ***Batch uploads***

If you have the right permission to batch file uploads then you will be able to make a batch upload of files by uploading a .zip file to the gallery and checking the batch-upload checkbox (if you don't check it the zip is uploaded as a single file).

Note that you must only give batch uploading permissions to admin since if users can make batch uploads the results can be unpredictable.

Once you have some files uploaded to the gallery you can visit the gallery from the gallery listing menu and see the uploaded files:

## Listing file galleries and downloading files

### File Galleries

#### Available File Galleries

create new gallery

Find

| Name                  | Description                          | Created                         | Last modified                   | User   | Files | Hits | Actions                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------|-------|------|----------------------------|
| <b>cosa</b>           | a                                    | Tue 03 of Dec, 2002 [23:16 ART] | Fri 03 of Jan, 2003 [14:04 ART] | admin  | 5     | 29   | Edit Remove Upload perms   |
| <b>cosa</b>           | cosa                                 | Wed 06 of Nov, 2002 [23:34 ART] | Fri 08 of Nov, 2002 [21:30 ART] | admin  | 4     | 5    | Edit Remove Upload perms   |
| <b>This is a gal</b>  | agal                                 | Wed 06 of Nov, 2002 [23:23 ART] | Thu 07 of Nov, 2002 [00:09 ART] | prueba | 1     | 7    | Edit Remove Upload perms   |
| <b>Primera prueba</b> | Esta es la primera prueba de FG iuiu | Thu 24 of Oct, 2002 [20:18 ART] | Fri 01 of Nov, 2002 [17:50 ART] | admin  | 3     | 13   | Edit Remove Upload (perms) |

Page: 1/1

1

From this screen you will see the gallery description and the files uploaded to this gallery (the number of files per page varies), you can order the list by any of the columns in the listing. Clicking the “get” link in the actions column will download the file to your local disk.

### Permissions

The following permissions can be set for the file galleries section:

|                                     | name                         | level      | type           | desc                            |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------|----------------|---------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_create_file_galleries | editors    | file galleries | Can create file galleries       |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_upload_files          | registered | file galleries | Can upload files                |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_download_files        | basic      | file galleries | Can download files              |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_view_file_gallery     | basic      | file galleries | Can view file galleries         |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_batch_upload_files    | editors    | file galleries | Can upload zip files with files |

The `tiki_p_admin_file_galleries` is a master permission that automatically includes the other 4 permissions.

## Comments

Comments can be used in

- Articles
- Wiki pages
- Blogs
- Blog posts
- Image galleries
- File galleries
- Polls

If you enable comments for some of the features of Tiki from the admin menu you will see links to show/hide comments and the number of comments for the object being viewed. In this section we'll explain comments for Tiki pages, everything will be the same for other Tiki features such as articles, weblogs, polls, etc.

(0 comments) [Show comments] [Hide comments]

If you see this bar at the bottom of the central part of the screen (or somewhere else if the customization changed the appearance) then you can see/enter comments. Click the "Show comments" link to display comments and a form to post new comments (if you have the permission).

## Controlling the display of comments

(0 comments) [Show comments] [Hide comments]

|                  |                                     |         |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|---------|
| Post new comment | <input type="button" value="post"/> | Smileys |
| Title            | <input type="text"/>                |         |
| Comment          | <input type="text"/>                |         |

**Posting comments:**

Use [http://www.foo.com] or [http://www.foo.com|description] for links  
HTML tags are not allowed inside comments

Comments  Sort  Threshold  Search   [Top](#)

Page: 1/0

0 Comments below your current threshold

You can see here the comments panel, you can enter a new comment, set which comments you want displayed and see the comments. To get started enter some comment.

Comments  Sort  Threshold  Search   [Top](#)

|                                                                  |                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>A comment</b>                                                 | Vote: 1 2 3 4 5 |
| by admin on Tuesday 12 of November, 2002 [12:29:45] [Score:0.00] | (remove) (edit) |
| this is a comment                                                |                 |
| [reply to this ]                                                 |                 |

|                                                                  |                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>Second thought</b>                                            | Vote: 1 2 3 4 5 |
| by admin on Tuesday 12 of November, 2002 [12:29:55] [Score:0.00] | (remove) (edit) |
| This is my second comment                                        |                 |
| [reply to this ]                                                 |                 |

Page: 1/1

0 Comments below your current threshold

The toolbar at the top can be used to configure how many comments to display per page, how comments will be sorted (Score/Date), the minimum number of points for a comment to be displayed, the minimum score for a comment to be displayed (threshold) and a find box to filter comments containing some word. The “top” link can be used to get back to first page of comments from any page

of comments. If you reply to a comment replies will be displayed nested to the comment as in the following screen:

**This is a test**
Vote: [1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) ([remove](#))

by admin on Monday 28 of October, 2002 [14:31:58] [Score:0.00]

This is some comment.

[\[reply to this\]](#)

- [Another reply](#) by admin (Score: 0.00) on Monday 28 of October, 2002 [14:37:40]
- [One reply](#) by admin (Score: 0.00) on Monday 28 of October, 2002 [14:37:29]

Clicking any of the replies will take you to a page where replies for the comment are displayed and you can enter a new reply or reply an existing reply.

If you are admin or the comment was entered by you as a registered user (not anonymous) you will be able to remove a comment after posting it if you didn't meant to post that comment or if you made some mistake.

## Voting comments and the karma system

If enabled by the admin you may be able to “vote” comments from 1 (poor) to 5 (very cool) in the title bar for each comment. When a user votes a comment the “Tiki karma” system for comments is applied, the karma system works following this rules:

- Each registered user have an associated number of “points”, an average between the user points and the number of votes gives a user a certain “karma level” varying from 0 to 5.
- Users gain points when a comment posted by him/her is voted, when someone votes a user comment with “3” the user gains 3 points and earns one vote.
- When a user votes a comment the number of point added to the comment depends on the karma level of the user, if the user has a high karma level the comment receives more points. For example a vote of “5” for a comment may add 4.22 points if the user has a very good karma or only 0.23 if the user has a lower karma level.

This system makes users that post good comments gain more karma and so their votes will make comments voted by them rank higher .

## Permissions

The following permissions control the comment system:

|                                     | name                   | level      | type     | desc                  |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|------------|----------|-----------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_post_comments   | basic      | comments | Can post new comments |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_read_comments   | basic      | comments | Can read comments     |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_remove_comments | editors    | comments | Can delete comments   |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | tiki_p_vote_comments   | registered | comments | Can vote comments     |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_edit_comments   | editors    | comments | Can edit all comments |

## The search engine



If the search feature is enabled and you assign the search box module to the left or right side bar you will see a search box where that you can use to search content in Tiki, the search box will display a select box allowing you to search for a word in:

- Entire site
- Wiki Pages
- Images
- Articles
- Image Galleries
- File Galleries
- Blogs
- Blog posts
- Forums

Once you select a feature and click the search button you will be redirected to the searchresults page :



In this screen you will see a list of results for the search, the links below the title can be used to search in different areas of Tiki such as pages, galleries, images, blogs, posts or articles. If there're a lot of results you will see links to the next/prev pages at the bottom, the number of items where the search criteria was found can be located just below the links to search different features.

This integrated search engine is very useful to quick-find content or information in Tiki and it will automatically detect which features/sections are enabled or disabled admitin the search only in enabled features. If you disable the Wiki for example you won't be able to find things in Wiki pages.

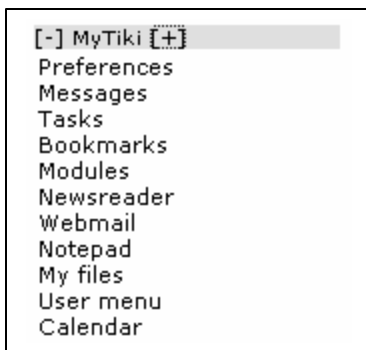
### **Full text search**

If you want you can enable fulltext search, with this option your results will be ordered according to its relevance to the search terms.

## Featured Links

Featured links are links to sites/pages of special interest by the user community of the site, when you click on a featured site link the site will be displayed. That's all, links to sites.

## My Tiki



Some features can't be offered to users without a valid login name and password, so they are only present when a user has logged in to Tiki using a valid username and password, the features that are available to registered users are grouped in the MyTiki section:

MyTiki options:

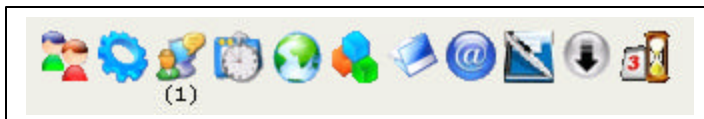
- MyTiki
- WebMail
- Inter user messages
- User preferences
- User files
- User notepad
- User tasks
- User calendar
- User menus
- Newsreader
- Configure modules

## ***Permissions***

The following permissions are related to registered-users features:

|                          | name                     | level        | type | desc                              |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------|------|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_cache_bookmarks   | registered ▼ | user | Can cache user bookmarks          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_create_bookmarks  | registered ▼ | user | Can create user bookmarks         |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_configure_modules | registered ▼ | user | Can configure modules             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_tasks             | registered ▼ | user | Can use tasks                     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_newsreader        | registered ▼ | user | Can use the newsreader            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_notepad           | registered ▼ | user | Can use the notepad               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_userfiles         | registered ▼ | user | Can upload personal files         |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_usermenu          | registered ▼ | user | Can create items in personal menu |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_minical           | registered ▼ | user | Can use the mini event calendar   |

## The MyTiki bar




This navigation bar will be displayed in all the MyTiki sections, in order from left to right the icons link to: MyTiki,

Preferences, Messages, Tasks, Bookmarks, Configure modules, Newsreader, Webmail, User notepad, User files and User calendar. We'll explain each section next.

## The MyTiki screen

**My Tiki**



(1)

| User Pages |        |
|------------|--------|
| HomePage   | (edit) |

| User Blogs              |        |
|-------------------------|--------|
| Some interesting things | (edit) |
| Foo                     | (edit) |
| gfgf                    | (edit) |

| Assigned items                |        |
|-------------------------------|--------|
| khjk at tracker A new tracker | (edit) |
| ijkl at tracker A new tracker | (edit) |



| Unread Messages |  |
|-----------------|--|
| Hola admin      |  |

| Tasks  |  |
|--------|--|
| fsf    |  |
| hfhfhf |  |

This screen shows a list of items that belong to the user, the screen can list user pages, blogs, assigned items from the trackers, messages and tasks. Other modules can be added in future versions of Tiki. The user can configure which of this listings will appear on the MyTiki screen from his user preferences screen.

### ***The user preferences screen***

If enabled from the admin menu you will see a link to “user preferences” in the main menu, the user preferences page is a page for registered users (users with a valid login and password already logged in the system) where they can set up several preferences about the site and where they can see some stats and quick links to pages, blogs or galleries they have created.

| User Information                     |                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name:                                | admin                                                                                                                    |
| Last login:                          | 28/Mar [23:25 GMT]                                                                                                       |
| Email:                               | <input type="text" value="lrargerich@yahoo.com"/>                                                                        |
| Country:                             |  <input type="text" value="Argentina"/> |
| Theme:                               | <input type="text" value="default2.css"/>                                                                                |
| Language:                            | <input type="text" value="en"/>                                                                                          |
| Real Name:                           | <input type="text" value="Garland Foster"/>                                                                              |
| Avatar:                              |  <a href="#">Pick user Avatar</a>       |
| Number of visited pages to remember: | <input type="text" value="4"/>                                                                                           |
| HomePage:                            | <input type="text" value="y"/>                                                                                           |
| Your personal Wiki Page:             | <a href="#">UserPageadmin(edit)</a>                                                                                      |
| Displayed time zone:                 | <input type="text" value="Greenwich : Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) GMT+00:00"/>                                             |
| User information:                    | <input type="text" value="public"/>                                                                                      |
| Use dbl click to edit pages:         | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                                                                                      |
| <input type="button" value="set"/>   |                                                                                                                          |

The user preferences will display a screen such as the one presented, as you can see it has a box where the user can change his email, the theme, his real name, home page and it has a link to the user personal wiki page as well as a link to edit the page.

This screen can be used to set up different themes for users, in the future we plan to add a lot of themes, specially themes for users needing special accesibility features such as aural properties, bigger than normal text, absense of colors, etc.

Basically all the preferences that can be set at the user level can be found in this screen. The user can choose an avatar for him, the pcik user avatar link can be used to let the user select hist avatar.

In this screen the user can also configure the user messages settings, the user tasks settings and what will be displayed in the mytiki screen.

| User Messages                                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Messages per page                                                  | 5 <input type="button" value="v"/>  |
| Allow messages from other users                                    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Send me an email for messages with priority equal or greater than: | 4 <input type="button" value="v"/>  |
| <input type="button" value="set"/>                                 |                                     |

| User Tasks                         |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Tasks per page                     | 20 <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Use dates                          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="button" value="set"/> |                                     |

| My Tiki                            |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| My pages                           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| My blogs                           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| My galleries                       | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| My messages                        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| My tasks                           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| My items                           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="button" value="set"/> |                                     |

## User Avatars

An "Avatar" is a graphical representation of the user. It is used in the forums to identify the user when he posts a message in a forum. If the user is anonymous or didn't select it's avatar no avatar is displayed.

To select your avatar as a registered user click the "pick avatar link" in the user preferences page.

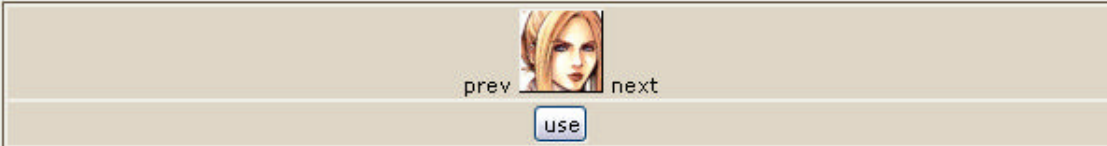
## Pick your avatar

[User Preferences | User Bookmarks | Pick user Avatar ]

Your current avatar:



## Pick avatar from the library



## Upload your own avatar

File:

You can select an avatar from the library (there're more than 500) or you can upload a picture/image to be used as your avatar (it will be resized to 45x45).

The avatar will be displayed in forum posts.

| author                                                                                                                 | message                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
|                                     | <b>fdsfs</b> [edit] [x] [quote] |
| <b>author</b><br>admin                                                                                                 | fsdfs                           |
| <div> on: Mon 02 of Dec, 2002 [19:02 ART] score: 0.00 <b>Vote:</b> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>3</u> <u>4</u> <u>5</u> </div> |                                 |

## User messages

The user messages screen can be used to access the Tiki internal messaging system between users (like email but internal to your tiki site).

## Mailbox

[Mailbox](#) [Compose](#) [Broadcast](#)

Messages:  Priority:  Containing:  [filter](#)

[delete](#) [Mark as unread](#) [mark](#)

|                          | from  | subject           | date                        | size        |
|--------------------------|-------|-------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | admin | <u>fsfs</u>       | Sun Mar 2003 [16:04]        | 12 b        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | admin | <b>Hola admin</b> | <b>Sat Mar 2003 [16:04]</b> | <b>28 b</b> |

The messages section is divided in three screens: Mailbox, compose and broadcast (if permissions are ok). The mailbox is shown on the left of this text, it displays the list of messages ordered by date. The user can sort messages as he

wants, he can filter messages by different flags or priority or find messages containing some text. Messages can be mark as read, unread or flagged/unflagged. There's a filter to see only flagged messages or unflagged. The checkboxes on the left are used to mark or remove some messages. Unread messages are displayed in bold font to make the user notice them. If the user clicks on any message subject a screen to read messages is displayed:

[Mailbox](#) [Compose](#) [Broadcast](#)

[Next](#) [Return to messages](#)

[delete](#) [reply](#) [replyall](#)

Flag this message

**From:** admin  
**To:** admin  
**Cc:**  
**Subject:** Hola admin  
**Date:** Sat Mar 2003 [16:04]

jlshjlfsdh  
 sf;sjfls  
 fsjfls

The user can read the message, reply it, move to the next message or flag the message for follow up if he wants.

## Composing messages

**Mailbox** **Compose** **Broadcast**

|           |                                             |                                     |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| To:       | <input type="text"/>                        | <input type="button" value="send"/> |
| CC:       | <input type="text"/>                        |                                     |
| BCC:      | <input type="text"/>                        |                                     |
| Priority: | 3 -Normal- <input type="button" value="v"/> |                                     |
| Subject:  | <input type="text"/>                        |                                     |

In this screen the user can compose a message the to, cc and bcc are similar to the fields used to send emails but Tiki user names should be entered instead of mail addresses.

## Broadcasting

Group: Anonymous ▼

Priority: 3 -Normal- ▼

Subject:

A broadcast is a message sent to many users, the message can be sent to a Tiki group or to all users (if permissions are ok).

## Permissions

The following permissions apply to the inter-user messaging system in Tiki

|                          | name             | level        | type  | desc                         |
|--------------------------|------------------|--------------|-------|------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_messages  | registered ▼ | messu | Can use the messaging system |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_broadcast | admin ▼      | messu | Can broadcast messages       |

## User tasks

This feature is used to admin user tasks, similar to a to-do list, the tasks screen is divided in two parts: a list of tasks and a form to enter a new task:

### The list of tasks:

Use dates All tasks

Find

|                          | title  | start      | priority | completed |
|--------------------------|--------|------------|----------|-----------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | fsf    | 22/03/2003 | 3        | 0%        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | hfhfhf | 20/03/2003 | 3        | 100%      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | gdfgd  | 15/03/2003 | 3        | 40%       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | ffdfd  | 16/03/2003 | 3        | 0%        |

Page: 1/1

This list shows the user tasks that should be displayed. Tasks can be deleted, mark as done or re-opened (mark as undone).

### Tasks and dates:

From the user preferences screen the user can choose if he want to use dates for tasks. What is this? If dates are being used then tasks with a start date higher than the current date ARE not displayed in the listing or module, this can be used to program tasks for the future. If dates are not used then all tasks are always active. Note: when dates are in use the task listing will show links to display all tasks or tasks using dates only.

### Editing a task:

## Add or edit a task

|                                     |                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Title                               | <input type="text"/>                                                                                 |
| Description                         | <div></div>                                                                                          |
| Start date                          | <input type="text" value="March"/> <input type="text" value="29"/> <input type="text" value="2003"/> |
| Status                              | <input type="text" value="open"/>                                                                    |
| Priority                            | <input type="text" value="3"/>                                                                       |
| Percentage completed                | <input type="text" value="0%"/>                                                                      |
| <input type="button" value="save"/> |                                                                                                      |

This form is used to enter or edit a task, the start date field is only shown if using dates.

## The user tasks module

User tasks

☐ fsf (0%)  
☐ hfhfhf (100%)  
☐ gdfgd (40%)  
☐ ffdfd (0%)

A special module is provided to show tasks to the user when using your Tiki site. The module is called user tasks and it is displayed on the left. The user can add a new task to the list of tasks and he can also view the tasks that are active and mark some tasks as done or delete a number of tasks if he wants. This nice module is perfect to be used as a to-do list.

## User bookmarks

From the user preferences screen you will see a link to user bookmarks if you have enabled this feature.

User bookmarks are not only intended for internal links you can bookmark any site using this system.

The user bookmarks section let users bookmark any URL and organize their bookmarks in folders and subfolders, Tiki can also cache the current content of any page if the user has the permission to cache bookmarks. The user bookmarks screen is like this one:

## User Bookmarks

[User Preferences | User Bookmarks]

Current folder: TOP

| name            | url                   | action              |
|-----------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| cosa (7)        |                       | remove edit         |
| lala (0)        |                       | remove edit         |
| pepe cosas (0)  |                       | remove edit         |
| pepe (0)        |                       | remove edit         |
| google! (cache) | http://www.google.com | remove edit refresh |
| slash (cache)   | http://slashdot.org   | remove edit refresh |
| un link (cache) | http://www.yahoo.com  | remove edit refresh |

Add or edit folder

name:

Add or edit a URL

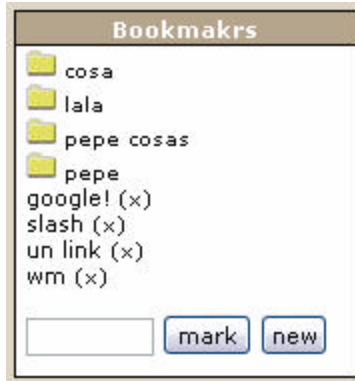
Name:

URL:

Users can create or edit folders and subfolders and add links to the current folder, each link can be edited or removed. If caching is enabled then a link to the cached version of the bookmark will be provided. Navigating bookmarks is easy. You can click on a folder to enter it, once in a folder a special “..” folder can be used to go to the parent folder.

## The user bookmarks module

What makes user bookmarks more attractive to users is the user bookmarks module. This module will be displayed as follows:



The module can be used to navigate existing bookmarks, you can click on a folder to enter it and you can click on a link to open it, you can remove bookmakrs using the “x” link if you want. The module will remember the current folder so it won’t be changed even if you navigate to any section of tiki. There’s an input box and two buttons below the module that work as follows:

- Entering a name and clicking “mark” will create a new bookmark to the current URL (the current tiki page) with the provided name
- Entering a name and clicking “new” creates a new folder in the current folder.

If you click “mark” without entering a name from any tiki page Tiki will try to guess a good name for the bookmark using the following reasoning:

- If the page is a wiki page the name will be the name of the Page
- If you are reading an article the name will be the article’s title
- If you are reading a FAQ the name will be the FAQ title
- If you are reading a weblog the name will be the weblog title
- If you are browsing an image gallery the name will be the name of the gallery
- If you are browsing a file gallery the name will be tha name of the gallery
- If you are viewing an image tha name will be the image’s name

So you can use the user bookmarks module to quick-bookmark sections of Tiki that will be remembered every time you log in, and can be accessed from the bookmars module from any Tiki section.

## ***Configuring modules***

If enabled from the admin screen you can allow registered users to configure the modules they will see in the side bars of Tiki. The rules are:

- If no configuration is made the user will see modules as configured from the modules administration screen
- The user can remove modules, change the position and order of modules but they can't display modules that are not assigned by the admin from the modules admin screen.
- The user can recover the default configuration with a single click whenever he wants

The following screen is used to let the user manage modules:

| User assigned modules |       |        |                       |
|-----------------------|-------|--------|-----------------------|
| name                  | order | column | action                |
| Left column           |       |        |                       |
| application_menu      | 1     | l      | up down move          |
| logo                  | 1     | l      | unassign up down move |
| last_image_galleries  | 2     | l      | unassign up down move |
| old_articles          | 2     | l      | unassign up down move |
| user_image_galleries  | 2     | l      | unassign up down move |
| user_pages            | 2     | l      | unassign up down move |
| top_games             | 3     | l      | unassign up down move |
| Random Image          | 4     | l      | unassign up down move |
| Freshmeat             | 7     | l      | unassign up down move |
| Right column          |       |        |                       |
| user_bookmarks        | 1     | r      | unassign up down move |
| Poll                  | 1     | r      | unassign up down move |
| Add                   | 1     | r      | unassign up down move |
| login_box             | 1     | r      | up down move          |
| featured_links        | 1     | r      | unassign up down move |
| breadcrumb            | 2     | r      | unassign up down move |
| last_created_quizzes  | 2     | r      | unassign up down move |
| shoutbox              | 2     | r      | unassign up down move |
| since_last_visit      | 2     | r      | unassign up down move |
| Menu                  | 3     | r      | unassign up down move |
| Slashdot news         | 3     | r      | unassign up down move |
| top_quizzes           | 3     | r      | unassign up down move |
| This is a test        | 3     | r      | unassign up down move |
| top_visited_faqs      | 3     | r      | unassign up down move |
| last_created_faqs     | 3     | r      | unassign up down move |

The user can move the modules up/down they can “move” a module to the other column and they can unassign modules (the login box and application menu cannot be unassigned). If the user unassigns a module he will be able to assign the module to any column in any position if he wants.

Assign module

|                                       |                            |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Module:                               | last_modif_tracker_items ▼ |
| Column:                               | left ▼                     |
| Order:                                | 1 ▼                        |
| <input type="button" value="assign"/> |                            |

## ***The newsreader***

The newsreader can be used to read newsgroups that support the NTP protocol for news. The first step is to configure or select a news server:

### **Selecting a server**

Select a news server to browse

Find

| server                  |
|-------------------------|
| news.php.net [edit del] |

Page: 1/1  
1

Add or edit a news server

|                                     |                      |                                        |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------|
| News server                         | <input type="text"/> | port: <input type="text" value="119"/> |
| User                                | <input type="text"/> |                                        |
| Password                            | <input type="text"/> |                                        |
| <input type="button" value="save"/> |                      |                                        |

In the example we configured news.php.net as the news server indicating just the name of the server (no authentication needed in this server) you can edit servers and add as many as you want. Clickin on a server in the list of servers will take you to server groups screen:

### **Selecting a group**

[\[Back to servers\]](#)

| Group        | Msgs  | Desc                                                                                   |
|--------------|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| php.announce | 3     | Announcements of new PHP releases                                                      |
| php.beta     | 113   | Discussion about beta releases (no longer active, see php.qa)                          |
| php.bugs     | 246   | Automated mailings from the bug database                                               |
| php.cvs      | 1     | Automated mailings from commits to the CVS repository                                  |
| php.db       | 11713 | Using databases with PHP                                                               |
| php.dev      | 0     | Developing the PHP language and runtime (list deprecated, use internals@lists.php.net) |
| php.doc      | 1     | Writing and translating the PHP documentation                                          |
| php.doc.ar   | 41    | Creating the Arabic documentation translation                                          |
| php.doc.chm  | 53    | Developing the Windows Help (CHM) format of the documentation                          |
| php.doc.cs   | 24    | Creating the Czech documentation                                                       |

The list of groups is displayed click on any group to view news for that group.

## Reading news

[Back to servers | Back to groups| Save position ]

| From                                                            | Subject                                                          | Date                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| php-bugs@lists.php.net<br>(Cap At Capsi Dot Com)                | #22953 [NEW]:<br>putenv doesn't<br>work as<br>documented         | 29/Mar<br>[17:17<br>GMT] |
| php-bugs@lists.php.net<br>(Mail At Artmosher Dot Ca)            | #22917 [Opn]:<br>Crashing Exhibit<br>Engine Mysql<br>Backup Omni | 29/Mar<br>[16:27<br>GMT] |
| php-bugs@lists.php.net<br>(Talk_to_me At Unforgiver<br>Dot Net) | #22951 [Opn]:<br>win xp && iis 5 -<br>copy() &&<br>unlink();     | 29/Mar<br>[15:21<br>GMT] |
| php-bugs@lists.php.net<br>(Talk_to_me At Unforgiver<br>Dot Net) | #22951 [NEW]:<br>win xp && iis 5 -<br>copy() &&<br>unlink();     | 29/Mar<br>[15:15<br>GMT] |
| php-bugs@lists.php.net<br>(Heyjohnlim At Yahoo Dot<br>Com)      | #22950 [Opn]:<br>Stack overflow<br>with IIS, ISAPI               | 29/Mar<br>[09:36<br>GMT] |

Page: 1/7337 [\[next\]](#)

The list of news for the group will be displayed, you can click on any article to read it. You can also mark your position so only messages that are newer than the marked date will be displayed in bold.

This is the screen used to read an article:

[\[Back to servers\]](#) | [Back to groups](#) | [Back to list of articles](#)

|                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------|
| [First   Last] [Prev]                                    |
| Newsgroup: php.bugs                                      |
| From: php-bugs@lists.php.net (Cap At Capsi Dot Com)      |
| Date: 29/Mar [17:17 GMT]                                 |
| Subject: #22953 [NEW]: putenv doesn't work as documented |

From: cap at caps dot com  
 Operating system: Linux 2.2  
 PHP version: 4.3.1  
 PHP Bug Type: Apache2 related  
 Bug description: putenv doesn't work as documented

I've been using putenv with PHP 4.3.1 and Apache 2.0.44, but it does not seem to restore variables correctly. I'm getting +0100 and -0800 entries all across my Apache logs for a static image server, referenced from multiple sites with different putenv("TZ=zone"); initializations.

Apparently putenv does not work for a specific request only, as documented (different problem than closed bug #10970). I also believe putenv affects all threads within a process. This virtually makes it impossible to use different timezones for different virtual hosts, without poisoning Apache logs with different timezones in it (which fails for a lot of analyzing software).

```
./configure --with-apxs2=/usr/local/apache/bin/apxs
with apxs2=/usr/local/apache/bin/apxs
with apxs2=/usr/local/musl
```

Note the next/prev links that can be used to read articles sequentially.

## Webmail

The webmail feature can be used to offer a web-based interface to your users webmail accounts, note that Tiki is not a mail server, your users should already have email addresses before being able to use webmail. Any POP3 accesible mail account can be used from Tiki.

## Configuring webmail accounts

After enabling webmail from the features section of the admin panel you will be able to enter the webmail section from the application menu. In your first visit to the webmail you will be automatically redirected to the webmail configuration panel.

## Webmail



settings mailbox compose contacts

### Add new mail account

|                                    |                                                               |      |                                  |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------|
| Account name                       | <input type="text"/>                                          |      |                                  |
| POP server                         | <input type="text"/>                                          | Port | <input type="text" value="110"/> |
| SMTP server                        | <input type="text"/>                                          | Port | <input type="text" value="25"/>  |
| SMTP requires authentication       | Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input checked="" type="radio"/> |      |                                  |
| Username                           | <input type="text"/>                                          |      |                                  |
| Password                           | <input type="password"/>                                      |      |                                  |
| Messages per page                  | <input type="text" value="20"/>                               |      |                                  |
| <input type="button" value="add"/> |                                                               |      |                                  |

### User accounts


| account                                        | pop                        | user  |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------|
| <b>garland_foster@fibertel.com.ar</b> [x edit] | pop3.fibertel.com.ar (110) | admin |


In this panel you can configure as many webmail accounts as you want, you also have to select the account that you want to use by clicking its name. Note that the current webmail account will be displayed in bold text. The information you need to setup a webmail account is very similar to the information you need for other mail clients such as Outlook express so the user will be familiarized with the settings.

### Reading emails

The mailbox icon will take you to the INBOX of your current mail account. In this screen you will be able to see your emails, read them and manipulate them:

## Webmail



[settings](#)
[mailbox](#)
[compose](#)
[contacts](#)





---

[View All](#) | [Unread](#) | [Flagged](#)
Msg 1-1 of 1

|                          | sender        | subject | date       | size   |
|--------------------------|---------------|---------|------------|--------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Luis Argerich | Hello   | Mon, 6 Jan | 1226 b |

Clicking on an email will take you to the screen where you can read the email.

## Webmail

[settings](#)
[mailbox](#)
[compose](#)
[contacts](#)

---

[back to mailbox](#) | [full headers](#)

|         |                                      |
|---------|--------------------------------------|
| From    | Luis Argerich                        |
| To      | garland_foster@fibertel.com.ar       |
| Subject | Hello                                |
| Date    | Mon, 6 Jan 2003 07:17:35 -0800 (PST) |

This is a test  
**Hey!**  
 Foo!

---

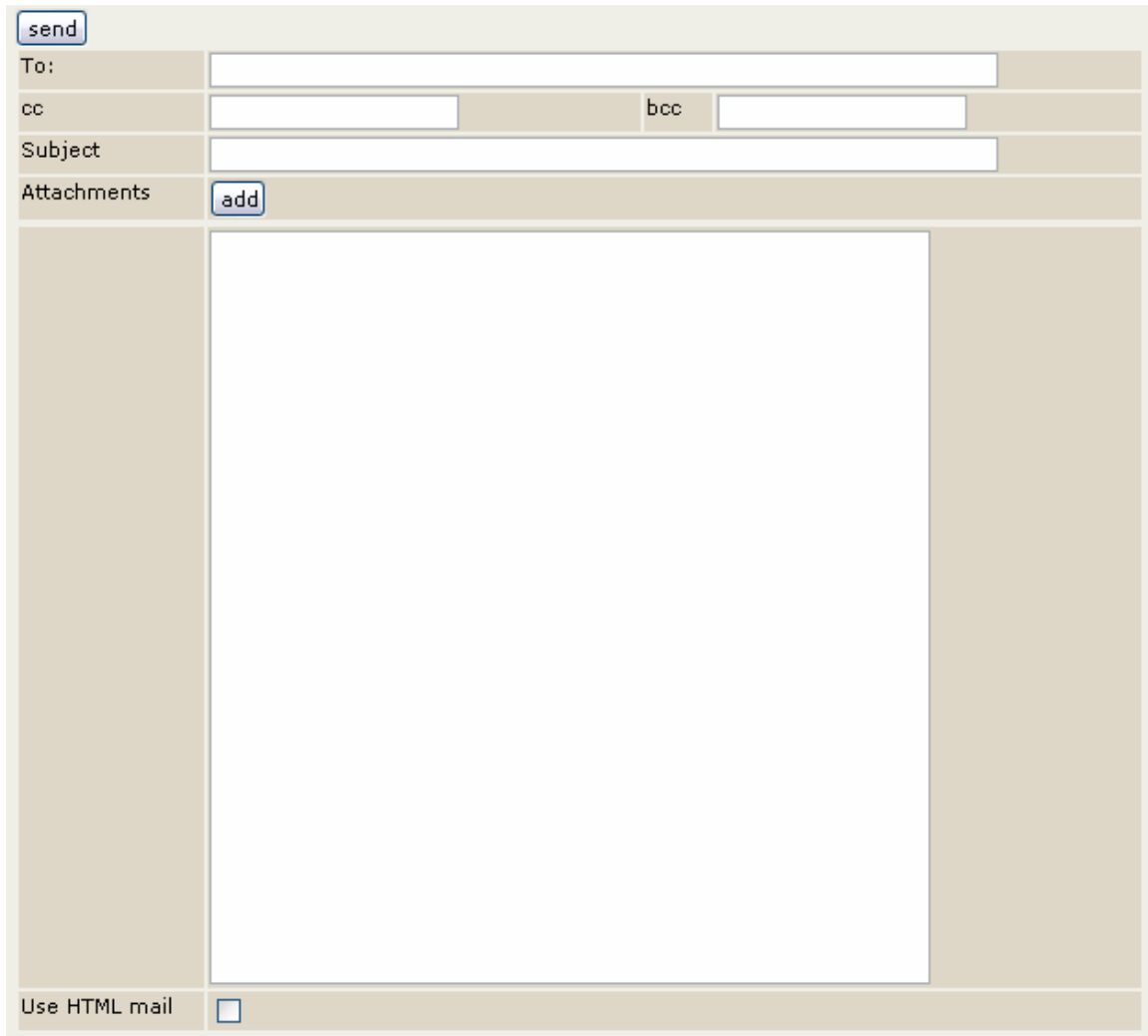
Do you Yahoo!?

[Yahoo! Mail Plus](#) - Powerful. Affordable. [Sign up now](#)

Mails that you already read are displayed in a different background than unread emails. You can select some emails using checkboxes and delete them, mark them for followup or mark them as read/unread. You can use filters to display only unread mails or only flagged emails.

## Writing emails

The compose icon let's you compose an email and send it using your SMTP configuration. The screen will be the following:



The screenshot shows the Tiki email compose interface. At the top left is a "send" button. Below it are fields for "To:", "cc", and "Subject". The "cc" field is split into two sections, with "bcc" appearing in the middle. Below these is an "Attachments" section with an "add" button. The main body of the email is a large, empty white rectangular area. At the bottom left, there is a checkbox labeled "Use HTML mail".

Note that you can use addresses from your address book by clicking the "to", "cc" or "bcc" links in the compose email screen.

**Address book - Phoenix**

## Contacts

Find





all a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z

| First Name | Last Name | Email                    | Nickname |
|------------|-----------|--------------------------|----------|
| Damien     | McKenna   | damien@mc-kenna.com [x]  | dmac     |
| Eduardo    | Polidor   | eduardo@polidor.net [x]  | poli     |
| Mre        | er        | Ee [x]                   |          |
| Luis       | Argerich  | lrargerich@yahoo.com [x] | luigi    |
| Mariana    | Tome      | mariana@fuego.com [x]    | Marian   |
| Natalia    | Golmar    | nati@sun.com [x]         | nati     |

Page: 1/1

You can attach up to three files to an email each attachment will have a maximum size that admin can configure. If your email server has limitations about email attachment size you should observe them since Tiki cannot override them.

## Webmail

settings mailbox compose contacts

|              |                      |                                          |
|--------------|----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Attachment 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| Attachment 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| Attachment 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
|              |                      | <input type="button" value="done"/>      |

You can send HTML email using Tiki just write the tags in the email using `<b>`, `<i>` and so...

## Managing contacts

Whenever an email is sent Tiki will check the addresses and if they are not in your addressbook will offer you to add the addresses to your address book.

Your email was sent

The following addresses are not in your address book

| Email                                            | First Name | Last Name | Nickname |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------|-----------|----------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> noreply@sourceforge.com |            |           |          |
| <input type="button" value="add contacts"/>      |            |           |          |

The addressbook can be managed clicking on the contacts icon in the webmail screen. You can assign a nickname to an address and use it when sending an email, Tiki will automatically replace the nickname with the email address when it can.



## Create/edit contacts

|             |                                     |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| First Name: | <input type="text"/>                |
| Last Name:  | <input type="text"/>                |
| Email:      | <input type="text"/>                |
| Nickname:   | <input type="text"/>                |
|             | <input type="button" value="Save"/> |

## Contacts

Find

all a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z

| First Name | Last Name | Email                    | Nickname |
|------------|-----------|--------------------------|----------|
| Damien     | McKenna   | damien@mc-kenna.com [x]  | dmac     |
| Eduardo    | Polidor   | eduardo@polidor.net [x]  | poli     |
| Mre        | er        | Ee [x]                   |          |
| Luis       | Argerich  | lrargerich@yahoo.com [x] | luigi    |
| Mariana    | Tome      | mariana@fuego.com [x]    | Marian   |
| Natalia    | Golmar    | nati@sun.com [x]         | nati     |

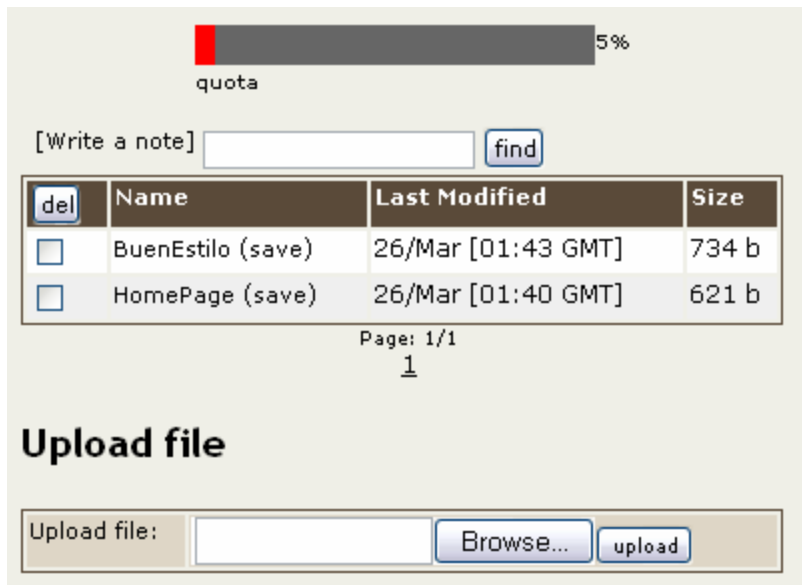
Page: 1/1

1

## The user notepad

This feature is used to let users write notes, save them and use them when they want. The user notepad main screen list the user notes:

### Listing notes



The screenshot shows the Tiki user notepad interface. At the top, there is a quota bar labeled 'quota' with a red segment and '5%' text. Below it is a text input field with the placeholder '[Write a note]' and a 'find' button. A table lists two notes:

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name              | Last Modified      | Size  |
|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | BuenEstilo (save) | 26/Mar [01:43 GMT] | 734 b |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | HomePage (save)   | 26/Mar [01:40 GMT] | 621 b |

Below the table, it says 'Page: 1/1' and a link '1'. At the bottom, there is an 'Upload file' section with a text input field, a 'Browse...' button, and an 'upload' button.

From this screen notes can be removed, notes can be red (clicking the name), notes can be saved to disk or deleted. A find feature is provided to search for notes containing some text. A note can also be uploaded from the local disk using the upload box at the bottom. Note that user notes are always stored in the database. The quota is configured as the same quote used for user files (see user files next)

### Writing a note

|                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| Name            | <input type="text"/> |
| Data            | <div></div>          |
| <div>save</div> |                      |

In this screen you can write a new note.

## Reading a note

List notes Write note

Normal ▼ delete edit

"Young writers often suppose that style is a garnish for the meat of prose, a sauce by which a dull dish is made palatable. Style has no such separate entity; it is nondetachable, unfilterable. The beginner should approach style warily, realizing that it is himself he is approaching, no other; and he should begin by turning resolutely away from all devices that are popularly believed to indicate style--all mannerisms, tricks, adornments. The approach to style is by way of plainness, simplicity, orderliness, sincerity."

--Strunk y White, "Los elementos del estilo"

"And thus an American textbook, typical required reading for 10th-grade English students, unknowingly extols some virtues of WabiSabi"


--scummings



This is how notes are displayed, note that you can read a note as normal text or as a Wiki page making wiki markup being interpreted.

## ***User files***

This section is used to let users upload files and store them in their tiki personal space, they can then download the files.

## User Files

 5%  
quota

|                          | name                                                                                        | created            | size   |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> |  putty.exe | 22/Mar [23:27 GMT] | 210944 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |  inbox.gif | 21/Mar [23:08 GMT] | 126    |

Page: 1/1  
1

## Upload file

Upload file:

The screen is very simple users can upload files, download them and delete them as they want. The quota and where files are stored can be configured from the userfiles section of the admin menu illustrated below:

## Configuring userfiles

### User files

Quota (Mb)

Use database to store userfiles: ☒

Use a directory to store userfiles: ☐ Path:

As you can see you can setup the quota in Mbs for each user and decide where to store user files, either the database or a directory. The path can be absolute or relative to the tiki directory, and must have a trailing slash. Example files/

## User Menu

This section can be used to manage items in the user menu section of the application menu (if enabled) the screen list options and options can be added/removed and edited:

Add top level bookmarks to menu

Find

| <input type="checkbox"/> | del | Pos | Name    | URL                                      | Mode |
|--------------------------|-----|-----|---------|------------------------------------------|------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> |     | 1   | foo     | http://www.google.com                    | n    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |     | 2   | Otro    | http://www.yahoo.com                     | w    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |     | 4   | Dos     | http://localhost/orion/tiki/tiki-view... | w    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |     | 5   | Otro    | http://localhost/orion/tiki/tiki-brow... | w    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |     | 6   | Primera | http://localhost/orion/tiki/tiki-list... | n    |

Page: 1/3 [next](#)

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#)

## Add or edit an item

|                                     |                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name                                | <input type="text"/>                                                     |
| URL                                 | <input type="text"/>                                                     |
| Position                            | <input type="text" value="14"/>                                          |
| Mode                                | <input type="text" value="new window"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| <input type="button" value="save"/> |                                                                          |

There's an option to automatically add all your top-level bookmarks (bookmarks in the root folder) to the menu.

The links are displayed in the user menu section of the admin menu:

User Menu

foo

Otro

Dos

Otro

Primera

fdsfs

A forum

Foo

a

menus

slash

gfgf

## Calendar

The calendar can be used to let the users keep a track of events and see them in several forms.

A bar is used to navigate the calendar, the navigation bar has the following format:

[Add] [Prefs] [Daily | Weekly | List] [Export | Import]

We'll explain each option below.

## Calendar preferences

Click on [Prefs] to get to the calendar preferences screen:

**Preferences**

|                                     |        |   |
|-------------------------------------|--------|---|
| Calendar Interval in daily view     | 1 hour | ▼ |
| Start hour for days                 | 9      | ▼ |
| End hour for days                   | 20     | ▼ |
| Upcoming events                     | 7      | ▼ |
| Reminders                           | 5 min  | ▼ |
| <input type="button" value="save"/> |        |   |

**Import CSV file**

Upload file:

**Admin topics**

|                                          |                                                               |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name:                                    | <input type="text"/>                                          |
| Upload file:                             | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| Or enter path or URL:                    | <input type="text"/>                                          |
| <input type="button" value="add topic"/> |                                                               |

The first part of the screen is used to control general preferences. Like the interval between slots in the daily view. The start and end working hour for the calendar. The number of upcoming events to show in the upcoming events list and when events must be reminded. When this feature is activated a javascript alert window will popup some time before an event starts.

Then you have a box to import events from a CSV (comma

separated values) file, you can use it to import events from Outlook, just export your outlook calendar as a CSV file (DOS) and you will be able to import all your events to the Tiki calendar.

The last section of the screen can be used to admin topics, events can be asociated with topics. To setup a topic you have to enter the name of the topic and an image to be used as icon (it must be small or it will look really ugly), you can upload the icon or point to an existing icon using a file path absolute or relative to the tiki directory or a URL.

Once your calendar preferences are set you can try adding events using the add link.

## Adding events

**Add or edit event**

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                     |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Title       | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                                                                                     | <input type="button" value="save"/> |
| Start       | March <input type="button" value="v"/> 29 <input type="button" value="v"/> 2003 <input type="button" value="v"/> 23 <input type="button" value="v"/> 30 <input type="button" value="v"/> |                                     |
| Duration    | 1 <input type="button" value="v"/> hour 0 <input type="button" value="v"/> minutes                                                                                                       |                                     |
| Topic       | None <input type="button" value="v"/>                                                                                                                                                    |                                     |
| Description | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                                                                                     |                                     |

With this form you can enter events indicating the title, start date, duration, topic (if some) and description of the event.

Once some events are added you can view them using the daily view, weekly view or the list of events.

## Daily view

| Upcoming events   |    | Calendar                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |    |    |    |    |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------------|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|--|--|--|--|--|
| Mar 30 23:20 fdfs |    | <div> <div>&lt;2003&gt;</div> <div>Today</div> <div>&lt;Mar&gt;</div> </div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |    |    |    |    |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |  |  |  |  |
| Mar 30 23:20 aaa  |    | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>S</th> <th>M</th> <th>T</th> <th>W</th> <th>T</th> <th>F</th> <th>S</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>3</td> <td>4</td> <td>5</td> <td>6</td> <td>7</td> <td>8</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td>10</td> <td>11</td> <td>12</td> <td>13</td> <td>14</td> <td>15</td> </tr> <tr> <td>16</td> <td>17</td> <td>18</td> <td>19</td> <td>20</td> <td>21</td> <td>22</td> </tr> <tr> <td>23</td> <td>24</td> <td>25</td> <td>26</td> <td>27</td> <td>28</td> <td>29</td> </tr> <tr> <td>30</td> <td>31</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> |    | S  | M  | T  | W | T | F | S |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |  |  |  |  |  |
| S                 | M  | T                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | W  | T  | F  | S  |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |  |  |  |  |
|                   |    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |    |    |    | 1  |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2                 | 3  | 4                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |  |  |  |  |
| 9                 | 10 | 11                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |  |  |  |  |
| 16                | 17 | 18                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |  |  |  |  |
| 23                | 24 | 25                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |  |  |  |  |
| 30                | 31 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |    |    |    |    |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |  |  |  |  |

< Saturday 29 of March, 2003 >

|                      |
|----------------------|
| 09:00 GMT            |
| 10:00 GMT            |
| 11:00 GMT            |
| 12:00 GMT            |
| 13:00 GMT            |
| 14:00 GMT            |
| 15:00 GMT            |
| 16:00 GMT            |
| 17:00 GMT            |
| 18:00 GMT foobar [x] |
| 19:00 GMT            |
| 20:00 GMT pepito [x] |

The daily view will show the upcoming events list (the next “n” events to occur), the calendar to navigate your calendar and the list of events for the day. You can navigate the daily view using the calendar or the < and > links at the top of the list to go to the next or previous day.

## Weekly view

< Mar 24-Mar 30 >

|     |    |                                                |
|-----|----|------------------------------------------------|
| Mon | 24 |                                                |
| Tue | 25 |                                                |
| Wed | 26 |                                                |
| Thu | 27 |                                                |
| Fri | 28 |                                                |
| Sat | 29 | 18:45 GMT: foobar [x]<br>20:30 GMT: pepito [x] |
| Sun | 30 | 23:20 GMT: fdfsfs [x]<br>23:20 GMT: aaa [x]    |

The weekly view shows the events for the current week and you can go to the next and previous week using the < and > links at the side of the week information.

## Event list

Find

Remove old events

| <input type="checkbox"/> | del | title  | start              | duration   | topic |
|--------------------------|-----|--------|--------------------|------------|-------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> |     | foobar | 29/Mar [18:45 GMT] | 1 h 0 mins |       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |     | pepito | 29/Mar [20:30 GMT] | 1 h 0 mins |       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |     | fdfsfs | 30/Mar [23:20 GMT] | 1 h 0 mins |       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |     | aaa    | 30/Mar [23:20 GMT] | 1 h 0 mins |       |

Page: 1/1  
1

This view shows all the events you can order them by any column and find events containing some text, you can remove events and there's an option to remove all past events.

## Exporting

Finally the export link can be used to export your tiki calendar to a CSV file that can be used to import your events into Outlook.

## Ephemerides

### Admin ephemerides

**Calendar**

<2003>    Today    <Mar>

| S  | M  | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
|    |    |    |    |    |    | 1  |
| 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  |
| 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
| 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 |
| 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 |
| 30 | 31 |    |    |    |    |    |

**Saturday 29 of March, 2003**


Title

Text

Upload image:

### All ephemerides

Browse

| del                      | title | data                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | foo   |  <p>fdjfhskdjfshkjfs<br/>sdfshflhslfhaf<br/>sadfdsafas pip</p> |

Page: 1/1

The ephemerides can be used in several contexts, from simple information about each day to display the comic of the day, the story of the day, etc.

You can admin the ephemerides using the admin link in the ephemerides section of the application menu, the screen on the left will be displayed.

You can enter text and/or an image for each day, if you want you may enter many texts and or


images for each day. In the admin screen you can create new entries for any day, see entries for some day and delete entries

## Ephemerides

| Calendar |    |       |    |    |       |    | Saturday 29 of March, 2003 |  |
|----------|----|-------|----|----|-------|----|----------------------------|--|
| <2003>   |    | Today |    |    | <Mar> |    |                            |  |
| S        | M  | T     | W  | T  | F     | S  |                            |  |
|          |    |       |    |    |       | 1  |                            |  |
| 2        | 3  | 4     | 5  | 6  | 7     | 8  |                            |  |
| 9        | 10 | 11    | 12 | 13 | 14    | 15 |                            |  |
| 16       | 17 | 18    | 19 | 20 | 21    | 22 |                            |  |
| 23       | 24 | 25    | 26 | 27 | 28    | 29 |                            |  |
| 30       | 31 |       |    |    |       |    |                            |  |

## Ephemerides

Admin

| title | data                                                                               |  |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| foo   |  |  |
|       | fdjfhskdjfshkjfs<br>sdfshflhslfhaf<br>sadfdsafas pip                               |  |

Page: 1/1

1

As a user you can browse the ephemerides and see the entries for each day, the calendar can be used to browse different days.

There's a module related to the ephemerides that can be used to display the ephemerides for the current day, if there are many entries for the current day one will be displayed randomly.

## The directory

The directory can be used to categorize, and browse collections of links, it's very similar to the Dmoz open directory or Google's directory. The Tiki links directory has many interesting features, we'll begin explaining the admin features and then the user level features.

## Directory Administration

[browse](#) [admin](#) [categories](#) [related](#) [sites](#) [validate](#)

### Statistics

There are 0 invalid sites  
There are 0 valid sites  
There are 0 categories  
Users have visited sites from the directory  
Users have searched times from the directory

### Menu

- Admin categories
- Admin sites
- Admin category relationships
- Validate links
- Settings

Press the admin link on the directory section of the application menu to get the screen on the left. The navigation bar is used to access the different administration features of the directory. The first link can be used to browse the directory as a user and the other links to admin different features.

This screen shows statistics about the directory and a menu to the different admin features.

### Managing categories

Clicking on categories will take you to the categories administration screen. A form to add a new categories will be displayed and a list of categories under the current parent.

## Parent category:

Top

## Add or edit a category

|                                        |                                                              |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name:                                  | <input type="text"/>                                         |
| Description:                           | <input type="text"/>                                         |
| Children type:                         | Most visited sub-categories <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Maximum number of children to show:    | 3 <input type="button" value="v"/>                           |
| Allow sites in this category:          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                          |
| Show number of sites in this category: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                          |
| Editor group:                          | None <input type="button" value="v"/>                        |
| <input type="button" value="save"/>    |                                                              |

## Subcategories

| name | cType | view | allow | count | editor | action             |
|------|-------|------|-------|-------|--------|--------------------|
| PHP  | c     | 3    | y (0) | y     |        | remove relate edit |
| XML  | c     | 3    | n     | n     |        | remove relate edit |

Page: 1/1

1

Note that categories are arranged as a tree, being the root of the tree the TOP category, you can create sub categories for any category selecting the category as the parent category and then adding a new subcategory to it.

The options are the following:

Name: Category name

Description: Category description

**Children Type:** When browsing the category tree a line of text will be displayed below the category name, you can choose what goes in this line between the most accessed sub categories, random subcategories or the category description.

**Maximum number of childs to show:** Once you decided what will be displayed below the category you can setup how many items will be displayed, you can choose none to eliminate the line below the category name. Note that if you decide to show the category description this option has no effect.

**Allow sites in this category:** Whether sites can be added to this category or not.

**Show number of sites:** If enabled the number of sites in the category will be displayed next to the category name.

**Editor group:** You can indicate a Tiki group that will have admin permission for this category if you want.

## Related categories

**Parent category:**

PHP >> Portals

**Add a related category**

|                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Category:                           | XML <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Mutual:                             | <input type="checkbox"/>             |
| <input type="button" value="save"/> |                                      |

**Related categories**

| category                                                    | action                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PHP >> Script repositories <input type="button" value="v"/> | <input type="button" value="remove"/> <input type="button" value="update"/> |

Page: 1/1  
1

You can make relations between categories to let the user see a box to related categories when browsing one. In this screen you admin relationships between categories.

First select the category that will be related as the parent category, then choose the category related and click mutual if the relationship goes in both ways

(A=>B, B=>A). The save will add the relationship. Below the box to relate categories you will see a list of the categories that are related to the parent category selected, you can change relationships and remove them if you want.

## Managing sites



### Parent category:

PHP>>Portals

### Add or edit a site

|                                     |                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name:                               | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                                |
| Description:                        | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                                |
| URL:                                | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                                |
| Categories:                         | <div> <div>PHP&gt;&gt;Script repositories</div> <div>PHP&gt;&gt;Portals</div> <div>PHP&gt;&gt;Magazines</div> <div>PHP</div> </div> |
| Country:                            | United_States <input type="button" value="v"/>                                                                                      |
| Is valid:                           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                                                                                                 |
| <input type="button" value="save"/> |                                                                                                                                     |

### Sites

| name                                                      | url                       | country                                                                             | hits | valid | action         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------|----------------|
| PHP builder                                               | http://www.phpbuilder.com |  | 0    | y     | remove<br>edit |
| categories: PHP , PHP>>Portals                            |                           |                                                                                     |      |       |                |
| Zona PHP                                                  | http://www.zonaphp.com    |  | 0    | y     | remove<br>edit |
| categories: PHP , PHP>>Script repositories , PHP>>Portals |                           |                                                                                     |      |       |                |

Page: 1/1

1

This screen is used to admin sites, you can choose any parent category and then view the category sites, edit them or add new sites to the category. Note that when adding site to a category you can also put the site in many other categories so you don't have to enter the same information many times. The list shows the information about each site as will be presented in the browser.


## Site validation

### Validate sites

[browse](#) [admin](#) [categories](#) [related](#) [sites](#) [validate](#)

#### Sites

[remove](#) [validate](#)

|                                                     | name | url                   | country                                                                           | hits | action      |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/>                            | fsf  | http://asfdasd        |  | 0    | remove edit |
| categories: PHP>>Script repositories , PHP>>Portals |      |                       |                                                                                   |      |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/>                            | Foo  | http://Http://foo.com |  | 0    | remove edit |
| categories: PHP                                     |      |                       |                                                                                   |      |             |

Page: 1/1  
1

The site validation screen is used to validate user-suggested sites, you can edit the sites and approve them or remove them as you want.

## Browsing the directory

### Directory

[admin](#) [browse](#) [new sites](#) [cool sites](#) [add a site](#)

Top

Find: any    
 in entire directory

**Subcategories**

|                   |                                                                                                   |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b><u>XML</u></b> | <b><u>PHP</u> (2)</b>                                                                             |
|                   | <a href="#">Script repositories</a> (1) <a href="#">Magazines</a> (1) <a href="#">Portals</a> (2) |

|                     |                        |                      |
|---------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| Total categories: 5 | Total links: 3         | Links to validate: 0 |
| Searches performed: | Total links visited: 0 |                      |

As a user you can enter the directory browser and a screen as the one on the left will be displayed note that the navigation bar is now a user-level navigation bar. You can browse the categories, see new sites, cool sites or add (suggest) a new site to the directory. The current category is displayed at the top and you can click on any parent to go

to that category. You can also find sites in the entire directory or the current category using the search box.


The list of subcategories shows the list of subcategories if any. And for each subcategory the information like the “n” most accessed subcategories or whatever you choose as admin.


**Top >> PHP>Portals**

Find:

**Links**

Sort by:

 [Zona PHP \[edit\] \(cache\)](#)  
 Zona PHP a PHP portal in spanish.  
 categories: [PHP](#) , [PHP>>Script repositories](#) , [PHP>>Portals](#)  
 Added: 30/Mar Last updated: 30/Mar Hits: 0

 [PHP builder \[edit\] \(cache\)](#)  
 A PHP portal with forums and articles.  
 categories: [PHP](#) , [PHP>>Portals](#)  
 Added: 30/Mar Last updated: 30/Mar Hits: 0

Page: 1/1  
1

Related categories

**[PHP>>Script repositories](#)**

|                     |                        |                      |
|---------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| Total categories: 5 | Total links: 3         | Links to validate: 0 |
| Searches performed: | Total links visited: 0 |                      |

This screen shows the directory browser in the category portals under PHP. Note the path at the top that can be navigated and the list of links for the category. You can sort the list of sites and click on any site to access it.

Next you will see a box with related categories if any, you can click on any related category to visit it.

Finally information about the directory is displayed.

## ***New sites/ Cool sites***

## Directory ranking

[admin](#) [browse](#) [new sites](#) [cool sites](#) [add a site](#)

| name         | url                                                       | country                                                                           | hits |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| PHP builder  | http://www.phpbuilder.com                                 |  | 0    |
|              | categories: PHP , PHP>>Portals                            |                                                                                   |      |
| Zona PHP     | http://www.zonaphp.com                                    |  | 0    |
|              | categories: PHP , PHP>>Script repositories , PHP>>Portals |                                                                                   |      |
| PHP magazine | http://phpmagazine.com                                    |  | 0    |
|              | categories: PHP>>Magazines                                |                                                                                   |      |

Page: 1/1

1

The new sites and cool sites links can be used to show the latest sites added to the repository or the most accessed sites added to the repository.

### ***Suggesting a site***

#### Add or edit a site

|              |                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name:        | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                                |
| Description: | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                                |
| URL:         | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                                |
| Categories:  | <div> <div>PHP&gt;&gt;Script repositories</div> <div>PHP&gt;&gt;Portals</div> <div>PHP&gt;&gt;Magazines</div> <div>PHP</div> </div> |
| Country:     | <div>United_States</div> <div></div>                                                                                                |
|              | <input type="button" value="save"/>                                                                                                 |

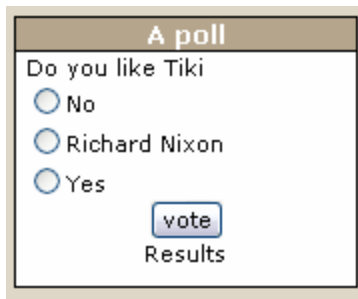
As a user you can suggest a site clickin the “add a site” link and using the following form to enter the site information.

## Permissions

The following permissions can be used to control the Tiki directory:

|                                     | name                         | level   | type      | desc                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_admin_directory       | editors | directory | Can admin the directory           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_admin_directory_cats  | editors | directory | Can admin directory categories    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_submit_link           | basic   | directory | Can submit sites to the directory |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_autosubmit_link       | editors | directory | Submitted links are valid         |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_validate_links        | editors | directory | Can validate submitted links      |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_admin_directory_sites | editors | directory | Can admin directory sites         |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_view_directory        | basic   | directory | Can use the directory             |

## Polls



**A poll**

Do you like Tiki

☐ No

☐ Richard Nixon

☐ Yes

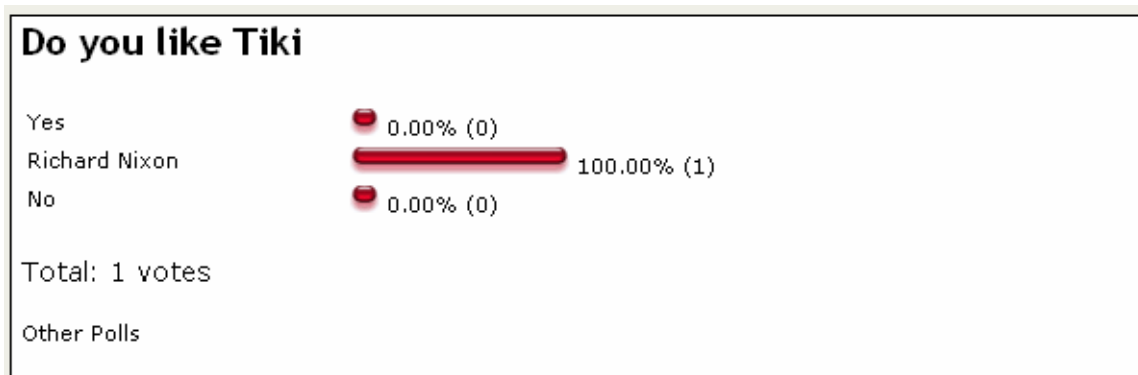
[Results](#)

As an admin you can configure polls that the users can vote, if there's a poll enabled and a module assigned to display the poll as a user you will see a box like the one we are displaying on the left.

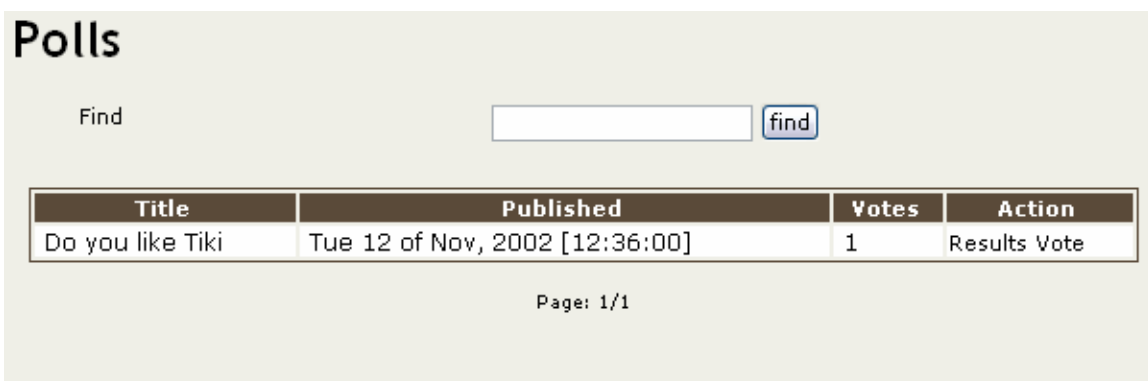
You can click on an option and press the vote button to vote or you can click the “results” option to see the poll results, a simple system is used to prevent users from voting many times, if

anonymous users can vote the system can be tricked and the user will be able to vote again in a new session. If only registered users can vote then the system always works and users won't be able to vote twice since votes are registered for each username.

The results are displayed in a screen like this one:



The “other polls” link can be used to display other polls:



## Polls

Find

| Title            | Published                      | Votes | Action                                       |
|------------------|--------------------------------|-------|----------------------------------------------|
| Do you like Tiki | Tue 12 of Nov, 2002 [12:36:00] | 1     | <a href="#">Results</a> <a href="#">Vote</a> |

Page: 1/1

From this screen the user can see the results of other polls and vote any poll that is not “closed” once a poll is closed by an admin users won't be able to vote that poll.

## Permissions

The tiki\_p\_vote\_poll permission can be used to control who can vote polls.

## Categories

Categories are used to classify Tiki objects, you can classify objects and create/edit categories from the “admin categories” screen. As a user you can browse existing categories using the “categories” link in the application menu (if categories are enabled).

The category browser will be displayed and will look similar to this screen:

## Categories

Current category: Tiki

[up|top]

search category:

deep: ☐

find

### sub categories

Tiki 1.3

Other versions

### Objects (3)

|                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| HomePage<br>(wiki page)       | !Welcome to the Wiki! The Wiki is a collaborative environment where the users can read the pages they are viewing, HTML is not allowed in Wiki pages but a special (and quite powerful) Wiki syntax c |
| Tiki General FAQ<br>(faq)     | Frequently asked questions about Tiki                                                                                                                                                                 |
| WikiSyntaxDemo<br>(wiki page) | !Wiki Syntax Demo This page shows the different things that can be done in the Wiki, you won't be able to edit this page but you can start practicing and editing from the UserPages section. So n    |

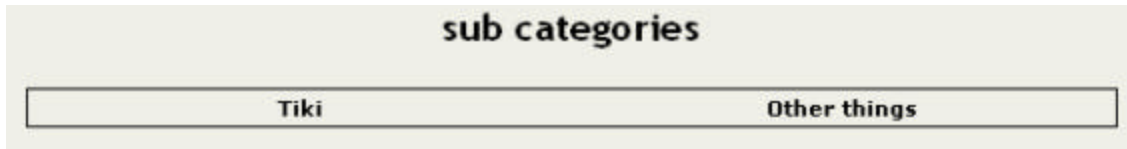
Page: 1/1

The top bar indicates the category that you are browsing, in this case “Top”, the up/top links on that bar can be used to go to the parent category or the “top” category.

Current category: Tiki>Admin

[up|top]

In this example we are in the category “admin” inside the category “tiki” as you can see the full category path is displayed to give the user the context of what is he browsing. Clicking “top” will take us to the top category while “up” will take us to the Tiki category. The name of each category is also a link, so you can go back to any category in the category path.



The sub categories section list available subcategories from the current category, click on any subcategory to navigate to that category.

Finally the objects part lists the objects that are classified in the category that the user is browsing:

| Objects (3)                |                                     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Do you like Tiki<br>(poll) | Do you like Tiki                    |
| HomePage<br>(wiki page)    | Hello This is a link to MyFirstPage |
| This is a blog<br>(blog)   | This is a test of a weblog          |

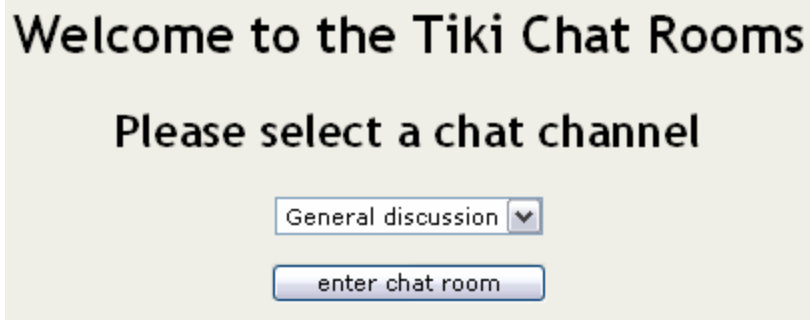
In this example we observe that there’re three objects in the current category, a poll, a Wiki page and a weblog. The name of the object is a link to the object the description is automatically generated from the object information.

The search category bar can be used to search for specific information inside a category. If you mark the “deep” checkbox then the category and all it’s subcategories will be scanned for objects matching the text you entered.

### ***Permissions:***

The tiki\_p\_admin\_categories permission controls who can admin categories. (See the admin categories section in the admin section of this panel)

## Chat



Welcome to the Tiki Chat Rooms

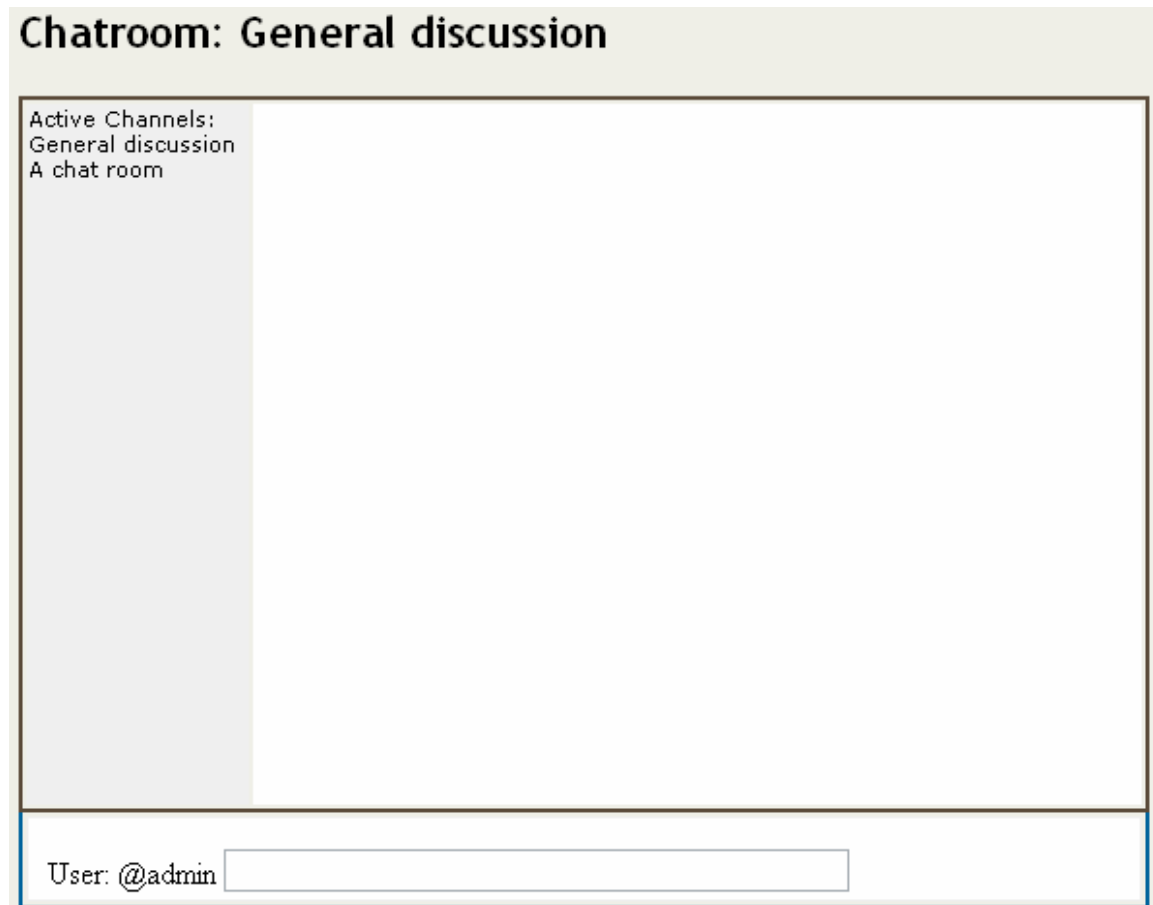
Please select a chat channel

General discussion ▼

enter chat room

If enabled you will see a link to “chat” from the application menu, the link will take you to a screen where you can select a chat channel to be entered. As an

admin you have to first configure at least one chat channel before enabling the chat feature or the users won't be able to enter any channel. If you are not logged in (if you are anonymous) a field will be shown where a nickname has to be entered that will be the name used in the chatroom, if you are registered your login name will be your name in the chat room. Entering the chat room shows the following screen:



Chatroom: General discussion

Active Channels:  
General discussion  
A chat room

User: @admin

The process is simple, type some text and see the text that other users enter, a list of available channels is displayed on the left and you can click on any active channel to change the channel where you are chatting.

Some smileys can be used in the chat text:

- (:biggrin:)
- (:confused:)
- (:cool:)
- (:cry:)
- (:eek:)
- (:evil:)
- (:exclaim:)
- (:frown:)
- (:idea:)
- (:lol:)
- (:mad:)
- (:mrgreen:)
- (:neutral:)
- (:question:)
- (:razz:)
- (:redface:)
- (:rolleyes:)
- (:sad:)
- (:smile:)
- (:surprised:)
- (:twisted:)
- (:wink:)
- (:arrow:)

HTML is not allowed in the chat text but if you want to write a link you can use

[<http://www.foo.com>]

or

[<http://www.foo.com>|description]

And it will be displayed as a link.

Private messages can be send using the following syntax:

:username:message

If a user sends you a private message it will be displayed in red.

## Permissions

The following permissions can be set for the chat system:

| [ All   General   Wiki   File galleries   Comments   Blogs   Image galleries   Forums   Comm   Cms   Chat ] |      |                                                        |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| name                                                                                                        | type | desc                                                   | action |
| tiki_p_admin_chat                                                                                           | chat | Administrator, can create channels remove channels etc | assign |
| tiki_p_chat                                                                                                 | chat | Can use the chat system                                | assign |

## Forums

Welcome to one of the most interesting features in Tiki: the forums system, the concepts are very simple:

- A **forum** is a collection of “topics” about a subject, you can have a forum to discuss a product, to discuss movies, to discuss about a car, anything.
- A **topic** is a collection of messages in a forum
- A **message** is a message a user posted about any topic.

|                |
|----------------|
| [-] Forums [+] |
| Forums         |
| Rankings       |

The forums menu in the application menu displays 2 links, one to the forum listing and another to the forum rankings.

If you are admin you will be able to configure forums from the admin-forums screen in the administration menu. Let's go to the admin forums screen to create a forum:

The admin forums screen show a list of available forums and a form to create/edit a new forum, the form has the following format:

### Creating/editing forums

## Admin Forums

### Create/edit Forums

|                                                                |                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name:                                                          | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                      |
| Description:                                                   | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                      |
| Prevent flooding:                                              | <input type="checkbox"/> Minimum time between posts: <input type="text" value="2 mins"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Topics per page:                                               | <input type="text" value="20"/>                                                                                           |
| Section:                                                       | None <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="text"/>                                                                |
| Moderator:                                                     | admin <input type="button" value="v"/>                                                                                    |
| categorize                                                     | [show categories  hide categories]                                                                                        |
| Default ordering for topics:                                   | Date (desc) <input type="button" value="v"/>                                                                              |
| Default ordering for threads:                                  | Date (desc) <input type="button" value="v"/>                                                                              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Send this forums posts to this email: | <input type="text"/>                                                                                                      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Prune unreplied messages after:       | 30 days <input type="button" value="v"/>                                                                                  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Prune old messages after:             | 30 days <input type="button" value="v"/>                                                                                  |
| <input type="button" value="Save"/>                            |                                                                                                                           |

The fields are described next:

| Field                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name                        | The forum name as will be displayed in the forum listing                                                                                                                                                         |
| Description                 | A description for the forum                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Prevent flooding            | If enabled then the users won't be able to post a message after another message without waiting at least the indicated amount of time. This can be used to prevent a user from flooding the forum with messages. |
| Topics per page             | The number of topics that will be displayed in each page when listing the forum topics.                                                                                                                          |
| Moderator                   | A user can be set as the forum moderator, when a user is the moderator he will be granted all the permissions for this forum.                                                                                    |
| Default ordering for topics | How will be the topics ordered in the list of forum topics by default. Options                                                                                                                                   |

|                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                          | <p>are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Date: Creation date of the topic</li> <li>• Replies: Number of replies (messages) the topic has</li> <li>• Reads: Number of times the topic has been read.</li> <li>• Last post: Date of the last post in the topic. (the last message posted)</li> <li>• Title: topic title.</li> </ul> |
| Default ordering for message s (threads) | <p>How will be the messages for a topic ordered by default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Date: message date</li> <li>• Title: message title</li> <li>• Score: Message score</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                        |
| Send this forum posts to this email      | You can configure an email address that will receive all the topics and messages posted to the forum                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Prune unreplied messages after           | If enabled topics that don't have a reply will be automatically after the amount of time indicated                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Prune old messages after                 | If enabled topics and messages will be automatically removed when they are older that the indicated amount of time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Section                                  | Forums can be organized into sections, you can assign an existing section to a forum, create a new section or don't use a section. When listing forums they will be grouped by section.                                                                                                                                                       |

Once a forum is created you can see it displayed in the listing:

## Forums

Find

| name                                                          | topics | posts | ppd  | last post                                            | visits |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-------|------|------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| <b>A new forum</b> admin<br><i>Foo</i>                        | 0      | 0     | 0.00 | Fri 27 of Dec, 2002<br>[12:40 ART]<br>by             | 0      |
| Cosa                                                          |        |       |      |                                                      |        |
| <b>Un forum de locos</b> admin<br><i>Crazy forum</i>          | 1      | 3     | 0.05 | Wed 04 of Dec,<br>2002 [17:27 ART]<br>by             | 21     |
| <b>A forum</b> admin<br><i>This forum is very interesting</i> | 1      | 12    | 0.19 | Mon 02 of Dec,<br>2002 [19:02 ART]<br>fdsfs by admin | 234    |

The edit link can be used to edit the forum while the perms link can be used to set-up individual permissions for the forum.


### Using the forum

As a user you can enter the “forums” section clicking the “forums” link in the application menu.

| name                                                                          | topics | posts | ppd  | last post                           | visits |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-------|------|-------------------------------------|--------|
| <b>Un forum de locos</b> <a href="#">admin</a><br><i>Crazy forum</i>          | 1      | 3     | 0.08 | 04 of Dec [12:27]<br>by             | 18     |
| <b>A forum</b> <a href="#">admin</a><br><i>This forum is very interesting</i> | 5      | 16    | 0.42 | 02 of Dec [14:02]<br>fdsfs by admin | 230    |

You can order the forum listing as you want and you can click on the forum name to enter the forum.

When you enter to a forum a list of “topics” will be displayed:

| type                                                                                | title                                                            | replies | reads | pts  | last post                           | author |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------|------|-------------------------------------|--------|
|  | <b>Atentiuon</b> <a href="#">edit</a> <a href="#">x</a><br>DJKSd | 6       | 94    | 0.00 | 02 of Dec [14:02]<br>fdsfs by admin | prueba |

Topics are listed using the default ordering for topics set for the forum, as a user you can order the topics by any of the fields in the topic listing. The “type” is used to classify topics (more on this later). When the “type” icon is shown reddish (as in this case) the topic is new for the user.


If you have the permission to post a topic you will see a link to display/hide the form to post a new topic. This is the form when displayed:

You will have to enter the title for the topic, the type and the comment (the topic text), you can use some smileys shown at the right if you want. The topic-type that you can set will be “normal” unless you are an admin for this forum, in which case you can use any type. Topics type are described next:

| Type     | Icon | Description                                                                                                                      |
|----------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Normal   |      | A normal topic.                                                                                                                  |
| Hot      |      | A “hot” topic, a topic that is very important or polemical or anything you consider “hot”                                        |
| Announce |      | An announcement                                                                                                                  |
| Sticky   |      | A sticky topic will be displayed on top of the list of topics regardless of the ordering selected for topics.                    |
| Locked   |      | A locked topic is a topic where users can’t post messages, admins can lock a topic by changing the type of any topic to “locked” |


If you click on the topic name for any topic a list of topic messages will be displayed:

## Forum: Un forum de locos

|                                                                                                      |              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
|                     | <b>dsada</b> |
| <b>author:</b><br>admin                                                                              | das          |
| <div>on: Tue 05 of Nov, 2002 [17:24 ART]    score: 0.00    <b>Vote:</b> 1 2 3 4 5    reads: 63</div> |              |

[Show Post Form | Hide Post Form]

**Comments** 10   
**Sort** Date     **Threshold** All     **Search**   **Top**

| author                                                                                                      | message                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br><b>author</b><br>admin | <b>aad</b> [edit] [x] [quote]<br>sadasda<br><div>on: Tue 05 of Nov, 2002 [17:24 ART]    score: 0.00    <b>Vote:</b> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>3</u> <u>4</u> <u>5</u></div>   |
| <br><b>author</b><br>admin | <b>dsda</b> [edit] [x] [quote]<br>dasdadas<br><div>on: Tue 05 of Nov, 2002 [17:24 ART]    score: 0.00    <b>Vote:</b> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>3</u> <u>4</u> <u>5</u></div> |

From this screen you can post new messages (if you have the permission), edit or remove messages (again if you have the permission) and quote a message if you want. The form to post a message for a topic is almost identical to the form used to post a new topic.

The toolbar can be used to sort messages by date, score or title, limit the minimum score for a message to be displayed (threshold) or find messages containing some word.

### ***Setting Individual permissions for a forum***

From the admin forums screen you can click on the “perms” link to set –up individual permissions for a forum.

## Assign permissions to Forum General discussion

[back](#)

### Current permissions for this object:

| group                                              | permission | action |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------|--------|
| No individual permissions global permissions apply |            |        |

### Assign permissions to this object

to group:

Setting individual permissions can be used to have private forums, to control who can post new topics in some special forums, to give admin privileges to a group of user only for some forums, etc. As usual when individual permissions are set for a forum global permissions don't apply.

## Forum Rankinks






The forum rankings screen can be used to display rankings for the forums.

## Rankings

| Forums last topics (Topic date)          |                          |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1) General discussion: rwrwe             | November 12 2002 (01:33) |
| 2) General discussion: rerwrw            | November 12 2002 (01:33) |
| 3) General discussion: gdfgd             | November 12 2002 (01:32) |
| 4) General discussion: Some topic        | November 12 2002 (01:28) |
| 5) General discussion: Tiki in spanish   | November 12 2002 (01:28) |
| 6) General discussion: Do you like Tiki? | November 12 2002 (01:27) |

## Forum permissions

From the admin groups screen you can set up the global permissions for the forums:

|                                     | name                    | level                                                                                        | type   | desc                        |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_admin_forum      | editors     | forums | Can admin forums            |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_forum_post       | basic       | forums | Can post in forums          |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_forum_read       | basic       | forums | Can read forums             |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | tiki_p_forum_vote       | registered  | forums | Can vote comments in forums |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_forum_post_topic | basic       | forums | Can start threads in forums |

## The communications center

The communications center can be used to send/receive objects from Tiki, for example Wiki pages and articles.

In order to use the communications center the feature must be enabled from the admin screen.

If you enable the communications center you will see a link to “send” pages from the wiki menu and a link to “received pages” from the wiki menu (if you have the right permissions).

### ***Sending objects***

Clicking the send link from the application menu displays the screen where you can send Tiki objects to other sites:

## Send objects

| Send objects to this site           |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| site:                               | <input type="text"/>                              |
| path:                               | <input type="text" value="/tiki/commxmlrpc.php"/> |
| username:                           | <input type="text" value="admin"/>                |
| password:                           | <input type="password"/>                          |
| <input type="button" value="send"/> |                                                   |

| Send Wiki Pages                                                                                                      |  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| <input type="text" value="Pages:"/>                                                                                  |  |
| <input type="button" value="HomePage"/> <input type="button" value="add page"/> <input type="button" value="clear"/> |  |

The first part of the screen must be filled after you selected all the objects to send, the second part can be used to select the Wiki pages that will be sent to another site, select pages (as many as you want) clicking the “add page” link. When you have selected all the pages to send fill the information at the top as follows:

Site: The URL for the site, for example: [www.foo.com](http://www.foo.com) (Don't use http://....)

Path: The path to the commxmlrpc.php script for the site, a typical value is /tiki/commxmlrpc.php, but if the installation is different it can be another path, sites should inform the path to the commxmlrpc.php script.

Username: The username that will be used to send objects to the site (it must be a valid username for the destination site and the user must have the permission to send objects. In other words the destination site must have a user with his name and configure permission to send objects for that user)

Password: password for the username.

If everything goes well you will see a message describing the result of the operation:

| Transmission results               |
|------------------------------------|
| page: MyFirstPage succesfully sent |

### How to test if this is working.

From the admin screen make sure that you have the communications feature enabled, then use the following information to send an object to yourself:

Site: localhost

Path: /tiki/commxmlrpc.php (change it you installed Tiki in other directory)

User: admin

Password: admin

The communication should be performed and you are ready to examine the received pages.

## ***Administering received Wiki pages***

From the Wiki section in the application menu clickj the “received pages” link. The following screen will be displayed:

**Received pages**

**Received pages**

Find

| ID | name        | comment | Date                           | Site                    | User  | action                     |
|----|-------------|---------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|-------|----------------------------|
| 1  | MyFirstPage |         | Tue 12 of Nov, 2002 [14:58:17] | luigi.melpomenia.com.ar | admin | remove edit<br>view accept |

Page: 1/1

In this screen you can see the list of pages received the date when the page was received, the site that sent the page and the user used from the sending site to send the page.

If the name of the page is in “red” then the page has the same name as an existing page in your system and so you have to rename the page before being able to accept it.

For each page you can remove it (if you don’t want it), edit the page (where you can rename it), view the page or accept it.

Once accepted the page will be part of your Wiki as a normal Wiki page.

## ***Administering other received objects***

The procedure to admin other received objects is similar to the procedure described to manage received pages, you will see listing of the received objects

and you will be able to edit them, remove them or accept them as objects in your Tiki site. Once accepted you will be able to manipulate the objects as normal Tiki objects.

## Permissions

The following permissions can be used to control the communications center:

|                                     | name                           | level        | type | desc                             |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------|------|----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | tiki_p_send_pages              | registered ▼ | comm | Can send pages to other sites    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | tiki_p_sendme_pages            | registered ▼ | comm | Can send pages to this site      |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_admin_received_pages    | editors ▼    | comm | Can admin received pages         |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_send_articles           | editors ▼    | comm | Can send articles to other sites |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | tiki_p_sendme_articles         | registered ▼ | comm | Can send articles to this site   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_admin_received_articles | editors ▼    | comm | Can admin received articles      |

If you want to configure a user that other sites can use to send objects to your site put the user in a group with the tiki\_p\_sendme\_pages, tiki\_p\_sendme\_articles or similar permission.

## FAQs

FAQs are used to group popular questions the users have about a specific subject, in Tiki FAQs can be used and administered easily.

## Creating FAQs

If you have the right permission you will be able to create a new FAQ from the FAQ listing:

### FAQs

#### Create/edit Faq

Title:

Description:

▲

▼

#### Available FAQs

Find

| title                   | description                           | created                 | visits | questions | action                |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------|-----------|-----------------------|
| <b>Tiki General FAQ</b> | Frequently asked questions about Tiki | 25 of Nov, 2002 [18:05] | 4      | 10        | remove edit questions |

Page: 1/1

You can create a FAQ entering a title and a description, then you can click the “questions” link to add/edit the FAQ questions.

## Edit FAQ questions

|                                     |                      |                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Question:                           | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="↑"/><br><input type="button" value="↓"/> |
| Answer:                             | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="↑"/><br><input type="button" value="↓"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Save"/> |                      |                                                                      |

## Use a question from another FAQ

|                                    |                                  |                                       |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Filter                             | <input type="text"/>             | <input type="button" value="filter"/> |
| Question:                          | Can I join the development team? | <input type="button" value="↓"/>      |
| <input type="button" value="use"/> |                                  |                                       |

## FAQ questions

Find

| ID | question                                                                           | action      |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1  | Can I join the development team?                                                   | remove edit |
| 1  | Can I use Tiki as a replacement for PHPNuke or PostNuke?                           | remove edit |
| 1  | Can I use Tiki for a commercial site/ application, can I sell Tiki-based products. | remove edit |
| 1  | How can I add XXX feature to Tiki ?                                                | remove edit |

In this screen you can enter a new question, re-use a question from another FAQ and edit or remove existing questions.

## Viewing a FAQ

Clicking on a FAQ title from the listing will take you to the FAQ, the screen will be similar to this one:

## Tiki General FAQ

[List FAQs]

### FAQ Questions

1. Can I join the development team?
2. Can I use Tiki as a replacement for PHPNuke or PostNuke?
3. Can I use Tiki for a commercial site/ application, can I sell Tiki-based products.
4. How can I add XXX feature to Tiki ?
5. How often will you release versions?
6. Is it mandatory to display the copyright message? Can I remove it?
7. What about postgress? I hate MySQL!
8. What is the relationship between Tiki and astronomy?
9. What kind of features are planned for next versions?
10. Will tiki be free forever?

### FAQ Answers

Q: Can I join the development team?

A: Of course we'd love to see new developers in our team, subscribe to the tikiwiki-devel mailing list at sourceforge and we'll get you started

Q: Can I use Tiki as a replacement for PHPNuke or PostNuke?

A: Yes you can but please note that Tiki is still in it's early stages, it's just a baby and may have some bugs and errors that are less likely to appear in a more mature software, however since there're many advtages in Tiki over those systems we do recommend migrating from \*Nuke to Tiki.

Q: Can I use Tiki for a commercial site/ application, can I sell Tiki-based products.

You can click on any question to see the question and answer. And that's all, FAQs are simple.

### ***Suggesting FAQ questions***

If they have the right permission users will be able to suggest FAQ questions, as an admin you will be able to see suggested FAQ questions by users and remove or accept the suggestions, once accepted you can edit the suggested FAQ question as a regular FAQ question.

[[Show suggested questions/suggest a question](#)] [[Hide suggested questions](#)]

|                                    |                      |                                                                      |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Question:                          | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="↑"/><br><input type="button" value="↓"/> |
| Answer:                            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="↑"/><br><input type="button" value="↓"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Add"/> |                      |                                                                      |

| Suggested questions |
|---------------------|
| fdsffs              |

## Permissions:

The following permissions apply to FAQs

|                                     | name               | level                                    | type | desc                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------------|------|---------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_admin_faqs  | editors <input type="button" value="v"/> | faqs | Can admin faqs            |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_view_faqs   | basic <input type="button" value="v"/>   | faqs | Can view faqs             |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | tiki_p_suggest_faq | basic <input type="button" value="v"/>   | faqs | Can suggest faq questions |

## Stats

Users with the tiki\_p\_view\_stats permission can view several site stats from the stats screen, the stats section can be accessed from the main application menu.

## Stats

[Usage chart](#)

[[Site](#) | [Wiki](#) | [Image galleries](#) | [File galleries](#) | [Forums](#) | [FAQs](#) | [User](#) | [Polls](#) | [CMS](#) | [Blogs](#) | [Quizzes](#)]

| Site Stats                |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Started                   | Wed 20 of Nov, 2002           |
| Days online               | 17                            |
| Total pageviews           | 4080                          |
| Average pageviews per day | 240.00                        |
| Best day                  | Tue 10 of Dec, 2002 (515 pvs) |
| Worst day                 | Tue 26 of Nov, 2002 (29 pvs)  |

Show chart for the last  days (0=all)

[[Site](#) | [Wiki](#) | [Image galleries](#) | [File galleries](#) | [Forums](#) | [FAQs](#) | [User](#) | [Polls](#) | [CMS](#) | [Blogs](#) | [Quizzes](#)]

| Wiki Stats                |             |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| Wiki Pages                | 13          |
| Size of Wiki Pages        | 0.002568 Mb |
| Average page length       | 197.54 b    |
| Versions                  | 23          |
| Average versions per page | 1.77        |
| Visits to wiki pages      | 3134        |
| Orphan pages              | 2           |
| Average links per page    | 1.23        |

[[Site](#) | [Wiki](#) | [Image galleries](#) | [File galleries](#) | [Forums](#) | [FAQs](#) | [User](#) | [Polls](#) | [CMS](#) | [Blogs](#) | [Quizzes](#)]

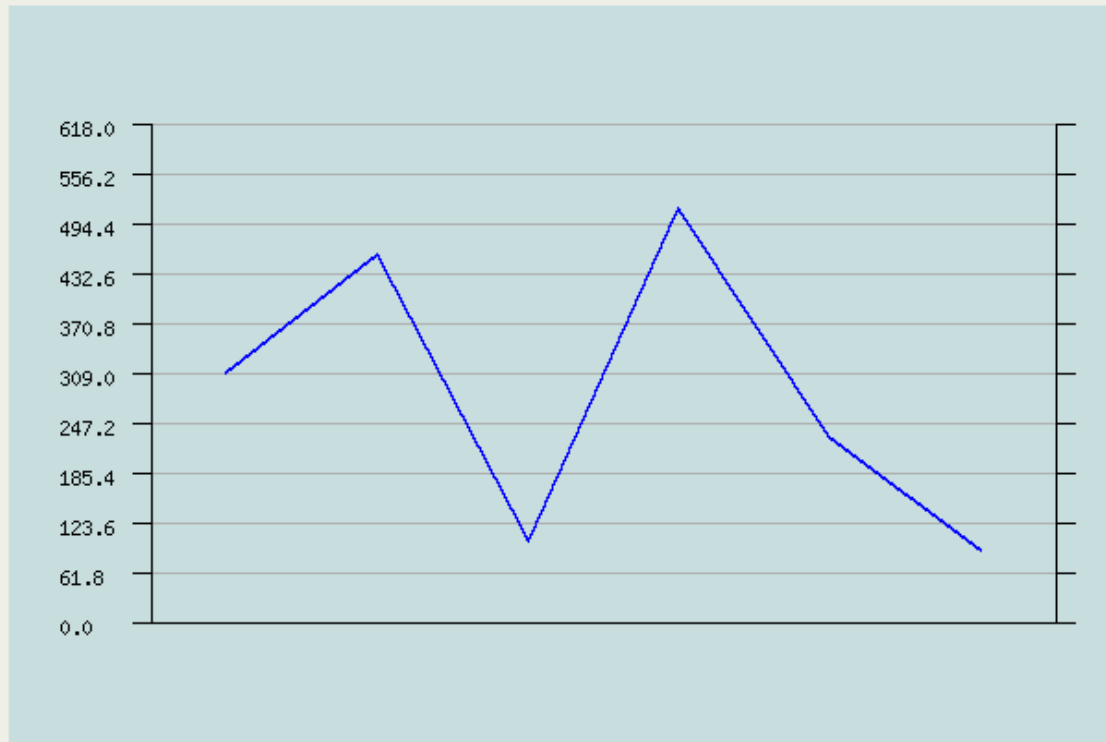
| Image galleries Stats      |      |
|----------------------------|------|
| Galleries                  | 9    |
| Images                     | 52   |
| Average images per gallery | 5.78 |

This screen will display a number of useful statistics for the site, including panels with statistics for different sections of the site, since the stats screen will be enhanced in future versions of Tiki will recommend you to examine your stats screen to check what stats are available in your installation.

There're some charts that can be displayed:

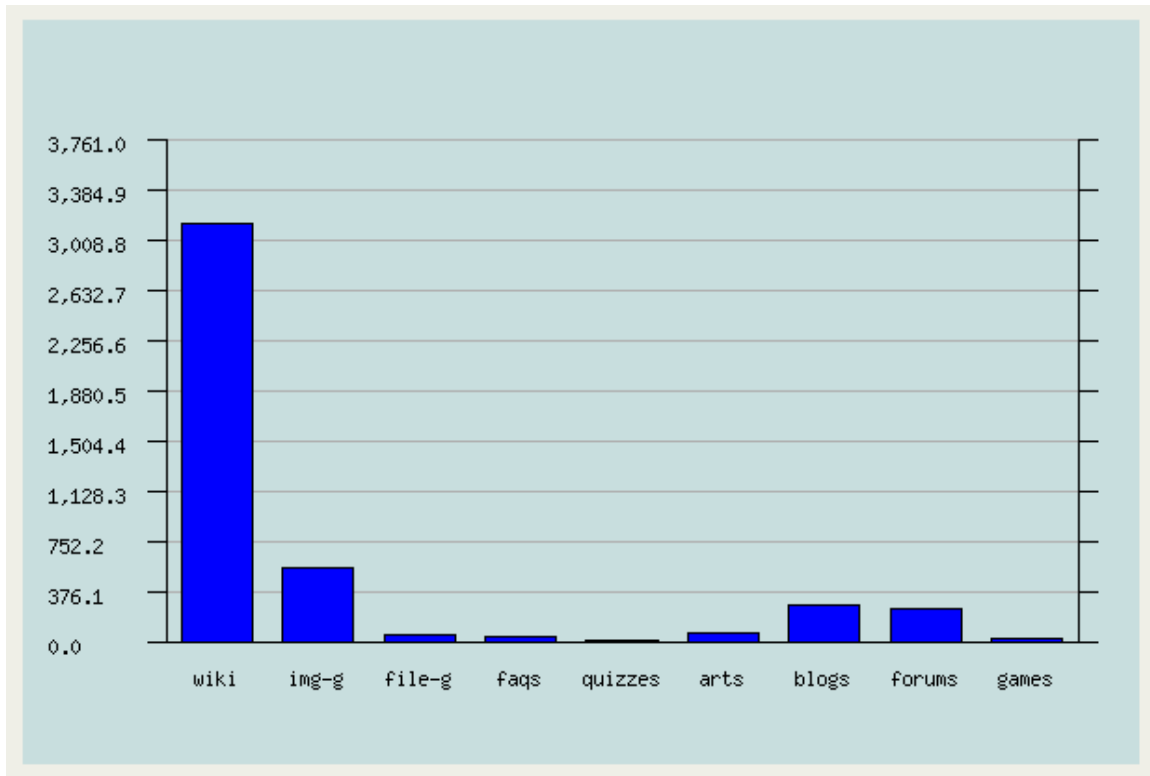
Page views chart:

Show chart for the last  days (0=all)



This chart shows the number of page views for your site for the last "n" days (use 0 for all the history). You can see if your site is improving or if it is going badly you can also see if you have some special good days or bad days.

Usage chart:



This chart shows the usage ratio for each section of your site, you can see what are the features of your site more appealing to users or more easy to access, you can use the information to improve or advertise impopular sections.

## Games

Tiki has a games section where users can play flahs/shockwave games, if enabled from the admin screen the games section can be accessed from the application menu and will display the available games as in this screen:

## Games

All games are from [www.miniclip.com](http://www.miniclip.com) visit the site for more games and fun

[Upload a game](#)

|                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
|    | <b>Table tennis</b><br>A superb table-tennis simulator. You can play against three opponents and each one has different skills. If you learn to control the pad is like playing real table-tennis. Amazing!                                   | Played<br>1<br>times |
|    | <b>Sketchy</b><br>Control your sled and try to win as many races as you can, strange things such as running over playing kids can happen. This is a nice game.                                                                                | Played<br>0<br>times |
|    | <b>Sniper</b><br>Shoot your targets using a rifle, a game where you do need a good eyesight and reflexes.                                                                                                                                     | Played<br>0<br>times |
|   | <b>Shoot out II</b><br>A cowboy shooting game with different stages, it is a good game if you can stand the long introduction and credits.                                                                                                    | Played<br>0<br>times |
|  | <b>Space Fighter</b><br>A very nice asteroids-like game, you control a ship and your mission is to destroy all the asteroids, you can improve your shooting power, collect fuel and shielded bonuses etc. Many levels and very good gameplay. | Played<br>0<br>times |

If you have the permission to admin games you will be able to upload new games, edit the game descriptions and remove games. Tiki maintains stats of the number of times each game was played and automatically orders games from the most played game to the least one.

Games are stored in the “games” directory so users are allowed to download the binary game if they want, you can add games to tiki by uploading new games using the upload screen:

## Upload a new game

|                                                                                                           |                      |                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Flash binary (.swf or .dcr):                                                                              | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| Thumbnail (if the game is foo.swf the thumbnail must be named foo.swf.gif or foo.swf.png or foo.swf.jpg): | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| description                                                                                               | <input type="text"/> |                                          |
| <input type="button" value="save"/>                                                                       |                      |                                          |

You have to upload the game binary, a thumbnail and the description, the thumbnail must be named as the game adding the image extension, for example if the game is foo.swf the thumbnail can be foo.swf.png or foo.swf.gif.

You can also add games to tiki by uploading directly to the games directory for each name you will need 3 files: the binary, the description and the thumbnail (if you don't want to upload a description you can edit it later from tiki)

If the game is foo.swf  
 The copy foo.swf to games/flahs  
 Copy foo.swf.gif to games/thumbs  
 Copy foo.swf.txt to games/thumbs (description)

You can also download prepared game packs containing the binaries, thumbnails and descriptions, the tiki-game-pack1 can be downloaded as a Tiki add-on containing some nice flash games that you can add directly to tiki by copying the contents of the games directory to your tiki games directory.

## Quizzes

Tiki offers quizzes that can be used for trivia, contests, e-larning systems, courses or just for fun (example: what kind of hobbit are you)

### *Creating Quizzes*

If you have the right permission you will see a link to "Admin quizzes" in the application menu at the Quizzes section. Clicking on Admin quizzes will take you to the followin screen:

## Admin quizzes

[\[list quizzes\]](#) [\[quiz stats\]](#) [\[admin quizzes\]](#)

### Create/edit quizzes

|                                     |                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name:                               | <input type="text"/>                                                    |
| Description:                        | <input type="text"/>                                                    |
| categorize                          | <a href="#">[show categories]</a> <a href="#">[hide categories]</a>     |
| Quiz can be repeated                | <input type="checkbox"/>                                                |
| Store quiz results                  | <input type="checkbox"/>                                                |
| Quiz is time limited                | <input type="checkbox"/>                                                |
| Maximum time                        | <input type="text" value="1"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> minutes |
| <input type="button" value="Save"/> |                                                                         |

### quizzes

Find

| ID | name              | description                  | canRepeat | timeLimit  | questions | results | action                                                                                                                |
|----|-------------------|------------------------------|-----------|------------|-----------|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6  | El quiz loquisimo | This is a quiz               | y         | n          | 1         | 4       | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> <a href="#">questions</a> <a href="#">results</a> <a href="#">(perms)</a> |
| 5  | An example        | This is an example of a quiz | y         | y (3 mins) | 3         | 4       | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> <a href="#">questions</a> <a href="#">results</a> <a href="#">perms</a>   |

In this screen you can see the list of existing Quizzes that you can edit, and you can create a new quiz or modify an existing Quiz.

To create a new quiz you must enter the Quiz name and a description the next fields are explained below:

#### Quiz Can be Repeated:

If you check this option a user can take the Quiz as many times as he want, if you don't check this option then registered users won't be able to take the Quiz more than once. Note that there's no way to prevent anonymous users to take Quizzes many times so if you do want to prevent a Quiz from being taken many times you should make the Quiz available only to registered users (you can set individual permissions for Quizzes if you want or you can use the global permission to make all the quizzes available only to registered users.

### Time Limit:

If you want you can establish a time limit for Quizzes, note that users can cheat and spend more time so don't take the time limit as a very tight restriction. When a time limit is activated the user answers will be automatically submitted after the time limit expires.

Note: If a quiz cannot be taken more than once then time limit restriction is indeed trustable, the user won't be able to spend more time on the Quiz than the time given. You can use this for tests on e-learning systems or courses.

### Store Quiz Results:

If you check this option then the results of the Quiz will be stored each time a user takes the quiz and you will be able to see the answers of each particular quiz instance. If you don't check this option only general stats about the quiz will be stored (percentage of times for each option in each question, average score for the Quiz, score for each Quiz result etc)

Quiz stats are always stored as well as each quiz result but if you want to store what the user answered to each question for each quiz then enable the store quiz results option.

## ***Adding questions to quizzes***

Clicking on the "questions" link for any quiz on the quiz listing will take you to the screen where you can edit the quiz questions.

## Create/edit questions for quiz: An example

|                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Question:                           | <input type="text"/>               |
| Position:                           | 1 <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Save"/> |                                    |

## Reuse question

|                                    |                                                                      |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Question:                          | What is the answer to this question <input type="button" value="v"/> |
| Position:                          | 1 <input type="button" value="v"/>                                   |
| <input type="button" value="use"/> |                                                                      |

## Questions

Find

| ID | position | question                                          | options | maxScore | action                                                              |
|----|----------|---------------------------------------------------|---------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15 | 1        | De que color era el caballo blanco de San Martin? | 3       | 10       | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> <a href="#">options</a> |
| 17 | 2        | Quien fue?                                        | 3       | 10       | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> <a href="#">options</a> |
| 16 | 3        | Cuantas botas son tres pares?                     | 4       | 10       | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> <a href="#">options</a> |

Page: 1/1

In this screen you will see the list of questions for each quiz, you can new questions or edit existing questions by simply indicating the question's text. If you want to edit the options for a question then click on the "options" link in the questions listing.

## Editing question options

This is the screen when you click the "options" link for a question.

## Edit question options

[\[list quizzes\]](#) [\[quiz stats\]](#) [\[this quiz stats\]](#) [\[edit this quiz\]](#) [\[admin quizzes\]](#)

### Create/edit options for question: De que color era el caballo blanco de San Martin?

|                                     |                      |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Option:                             | <input type="text"/> |
| Points:                             | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Save"/> |                      |

### Options

Find

| ID | text                 | points | action                                      |
|----|----------------------|--------|---------------------------------------------|
| 14 | Blanco               | 10     | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> |
| 16 | Negrito pero destiñe | 1      | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> |
| 15 | Verde                | 0      | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> |

Page: 1/1

Now you see the list of existing options for the question, you can add, edit or remove options as you need. For each option indicate the option text and the number of points the user will get on the question if he selects that option. Only one option can be selected for each question.

### ***Programming answers for Quiz scores***

When editing quizzes you will see a link to "answers" that can be used to program answers to show to the user for quiz results if you want.

The screen to edit answers is the following:

## Edit quiz results

[[list quizzes](#)] [[quiz stats](#)] [[this quiz stats](#)] [[edit this quiz](#)] [[admin quizzes](#)]

### Create/edit questions for quiz:

|                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| From Points:                        | <input type="text" value="0"/> |
| To Points:                          | <input type="text" value="0"/> |
| Answer:                             | <div><div></div></div>         |
| <input type="button" value="Save"/> |                                |

### Results

Find

| From Points | To Points | answer       | action                                      |
|-------------|-----------|--------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 0           | 10        | Muy mal      | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> |
| 11          | 20        | Bastante mal | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> |
| 21          | 29        | No tan mal   | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> |
| 30          | 30        | Isa          | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> |

Page: 1/1

To edit an answer indicate the score range for the answer (for example from 0 to 10 points) and the answer text. If the score for the quiz matches the range the user will see the answer after the quiz is submitted.

If more than one range is valid then some answer will be pick, this is not recommendable try to make ranges that don't overlap at all since range values are inclusive.

Range values for answers are inclusive if a range is from 2 to 13 the answer WILL be shown if the user scores 2 or 13 points or an intermediate value.

### *Taking a Quiz*

From the main menu users that can take quizzes will see a link to "List quizzes" that can be used to see the list of quizzes that can be taken. The list is very similar to the following:

## Quizzes

[quiz stats](#)

| name                                                                       | description                  | timeLimit  | questions |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------|-----------|
| <b>El quiz loquisimo</b> ( <a href="#">adm</a> ) ( <a href="#">stats</a> ) | This is a quiz               | n          | 1         |
| <b>An example</b> ( <a href="#">adm</a> ) ( <a href="#">stats</a> )        | This is an example of a quiz | y (3 mins) | 3         |

Page: 1/1

By clicking on a quiz name the user will be able to take the quiz. A quiz can be displayed as follows:

Time Left:  :

### An example

This is an example of a quiz

De que color era el caballo blanco de San Martin?

☐ Verde

☐ Negrito pero destiñe

☐ Blanco

Quien fue?

☐ Richard nixon

☐ Frank Ortiz

☐ El colocarbanner.php

Cuantas botas son tres pares?

☐ 6

☐ 4

☐ 2

☐ 12

If the quiz has a time limit indicated there will be a clock at the top of the screen indicating the time remaining and the quiz form will be automatically submitted after the time reaches zero. Time is also stored at the server level for the start and end of each quiz so if the user tweaks the javascript clock the server will check the time elapsed and invalidate the quiz result if the time is more than the time allowed to take the quiz.

Completing a quiz is simple just pick one option for each question and submit the quiz.

After the quiz is submitted if there's a result matching the score the user will see the quiz result. If not he will just see the score.

## Viewing quiz stats

The quiz stats screen can be used to check stats for quizzes. For example:

**Stats for quizzes**

[[list quizzes](#) | [quiz stats](#) | [admin quizzes](#)]

### Quizzes

Find

| Quiz              | taken | Av score | Av time    |
|-------------------|-------|----------|------------|
| An example        | 8     | 42.50%   | 20.75 secs |
| El quiz loquisimo | 1     | 50.00%   | 5.00 secs  |

Page: 1/1

In this screen you can see the average score for each quiz, the number of times the quiz was taken and other stats. Clicking on a quiz will display the stats for that specific quiz.

## Viewing specific quiz results

The screen where stats for a specific quiz are displayed is similar to the following:

## Stats for quiz: An example

[\[list quizzes\]](#) [\[quiz stats\]](#) [\[this quiz stats\]](#) [\[edit this quiz\]](#) [\[clear stats\]](#) [\[admin quizzes\]](#)

### Quiz stats

| User  | date              | time    | score        | result                                                                 |
|-------|-------------------|---------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| admin | 02 of Dec [11:39] | 31 secs | 30 (100.00%) | <a href="#">result</a> ( <a href="#">details</a> ) <a href="#">del</a> |
| test  | 02 of Dec [11:25] | 11 secs | 1 (3.33%)    | <a href="#">result</a> ( <a href="#">details</a> ) <a href="#">del</a> |
| test  | 02 of Dec [11:06] | 8 secs  | 20 (66.67%)  | <a href="#">result</a> ( <a href="#">details</a> ) <a href="#">del</a> |
| test  | 02 of Dec [11:05] | 11 secs | 0 (0.00%)    | <a href="#">result</a> ( <a href="#">details</a> ) <a href="#">del</a> |
|       | 29 of Nov [13:14] | 11 secs | 10 (33.33%)  | <a href="#">result</a> ( <a href="#">details</a> ) <a href="#">del</a> |
|       | 29 of Nov [11:50] | 32 secs | 10 (33.33%)  | <a href="#">result</a> ( <a href="#">details</a> ) <a href="#">del</a> |
|       | 29 of Nov [11:39] | 7 secs  | 10 (33.33%)  | <a href="#">result</a> <a href="#">del</a>                             |
|       | 29 of Nov [11:33] | 55 secs | 21 (70.00%)  | <a href="#">result</a> <a href="#">del</a>                             |

Page: 1/1

### Stats for this quiz Questions

Q: Cuantas botas son tres pares?

| Option | Votes | Average |
|--------|-------|---------|
| 6      | 4     | 50.00%  |
| 4      | 2     | 25.00%  |
| 12     | 1     | 12.50%  |
| 2      | 1     | 12.50%  |

Q: Quien fue?

| Option               | Votes | Average |
|----------------------|-------|---------|
| Richard nixon        | 3     | 37.50%  |
| Frank Ortiz          | 2     | 25.00%  |
| El colocarbanner.php | 3     | 37.50%  |

Note that now you can see a row for each time that the quiz was taken and the score for each quiz instance. You can also see the stats for each quiz question indicating the number of times each option was picked and the percentage.

You can remove quiz results if you want this can be used to let a user take a quiz that cannot be repeated again. (a new chance maybe)

If the "store results" option was checked for the quiz and you have the permission to see user results you will see a "details" link in the row. Following the link you can see the results the user entered for the quiz on that examination.

### Viewing user answers for a quiz

The screen that will be displayed is the following:

## Quiz result stats:

[[list quizzes](#)] [[quiz stats](#)] [[this quiz stats](#)] [[edit this quiz](#)] [[admin quizzes](#)]

| Quiz stats |                   |
|------------|-------------------|
| Quiz       | An example        |
| User       | admin             |
| Date       | 02 of Dec [11:39] |
| Points     | 30 / 30           |
| Time       | 31 secs           |

Answer:

Isa

## User answers

| Question                                          | Answer               | Points |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--------|
| Cuantas botas son tres pares?                     | 6                    | 10     |
| Quien fue?                                        | El colocarbanner.php | 10     |
| De que color era el caballo blanco de San Martin? | Blanco               | 10     |

As you can see you can verify the answers the user selected for the quiz on this quiz instance.

## Quiz modules

The following modules are related to quizzes:

| Module       | Description                                 |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------|
| top-quizzes  | Most taken "n" quizzes                      |
| last-quizzes | The last "n" quizzes created in the system. |

## Permissions

The following permissions can be used for quizzes.

| <a href="#">[ All ]</a> <a href="#">General</a> <a href="#">Wiki</a> <a href="#">File gals</a> <a href="#">Comments</a> <a href="#">Blogs</a> <a href="#">Image gals</a> <a href="#">Forums</a> <a href="#">Comm</a> <a href="#">Games</a> <a href="#">Quizzes</a> |          |         |                            |                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| <a href="#">[ Cms</a> <a href="#">FAQs</a> <a href="#">user</a> <a href="#">Chat</a> <a href="#">content templates</a> <a href="#">shoutbox</a> <a href="#">drawings</a>                                                                                           |          |         |                            |                        |
| name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | assigned | type    | desc                       | action                 |
| tiki_p_admin_quizzes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | n        | quizzes | Can admin quizzes          | <a href="#">assign</a> |
| tiki_p_take_quiz                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | y        | quizzes | Can take quizzes           | <a href="#">remove</a> |
| tiki_p_view_quiz_stats                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | y        | quizzes | Can view quiz stats        | <a href="#">remove</a> |
| tiki_p_view_user_results                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | n        | quizzes | Can view user quiz results | <a href="#">assign</a> |

Page: 1/1

Note that besides the global permissions you can indicate individual permissions for quizzes that will override the global permissions for that particular quiz.

## HTML pages and dynamic pages

Well designed portal systems let users edit HTML pages freely that can be displayed at the center section of the site by following a link on a menu, article or some site section. This can be used to construct sub-homes, presentation pages, help pages, ads, or anything you want.

In Tiki this is available and is extended with the brand-new (maybe not so new) addition of dynamic pages. Let's start.

First of all enable HTML pages from the main admin screen if you do want to use pages.

### ***What are HTML pages***

HTML pages are editable (with the right permission) blocks of HTML that can be displayed verbatim at the center of a Tiki site by using a link such as the followin:

```
tiki-page?pageName=soccer_results
```

Note tha HTML pages are identified by their name so names must be unique.

You will be able to create two kinds of pages: static or dynamic.

### ***Static vrs dynamic pages***

Let's start by saying that dynamic or static pages are edited and created without differences, the difference between dynamic and static pages is how the page is displayed to the user.

We'll let you know more about static & dynamic pages after learning how to edit HTML pages, after all dynamic and static pages are edited in the same way.

## ***Editing a page***

To edit HTML pages follow the "edit HTML pages" link from the admin section of the application menu. A screen similar to the following one will be displayed:


## Create/edit HTML pages

Page name:

Apply template


none 

Type:

Static 

Refresh rate (if dynamic) [secs]:

Content:



Preview

Save

## HTML pages

Find

find

| name   | type       | last modif        | action                                                                                   |
|--------|------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sample | d (5 secs) | 06 of Dec [17:16] | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> <a href="#">view</a> <a href="#">content</a> |
| foos   | s          | 06 of Dec [15:49] | <a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a> <a href="#">view</a> <a href="#">content</a> |

Page: 1/1

Note that you have to enter a name and the page content just that. The page content can be any HTML with the addition of dynamic zones. Dynamic zones are portions of the HTML page that will be replaced by content taken from the database. For example you can create the following HTML page

```
Soccer results
<table>
<tr><td>Liverpool {ed id=liverpool}</td><td>Man UTD {ed
id=manutd}</td></tr>
....
</table>
```

The syntax to include dynamic zones can be

{ed id=name} or {ted id=name} the difference is what HTML element is used

to edit the zone, ed uses text input boxes while ted uses textareas

After creating the page and saving it you will see a link to "content" from the listing of pages, clicking on content will take you to a screen where you can edit each dynamic zone on a page:

Important: when editing an HTML page line feeds are automatically converted to HTML `<br/>` tags

Note that static pages can use dynamic zones as well as dynamic pages.

## ***Applying templates for HTML pages***

Note that you can choose to apply a template for HTML pages, this can be very useful to automate the creation of pages from a established template where you can indicate dynamic zones. To create a template for HTML pages go to the edit content templates section in the admin menu.

## ***Editing dynamic zones for a page***

This is a screen where you can edit the dynamic zones for a page:

## Admin HTML page dynamic zones

### Page: sample

[\[Admin HTML pages\]](#) [\[Edit this HTML page\]](#) [\[View page\]](#)

Dynamic zones

Find

zone	content	action
comment	This is a test of some interesting ideas	<a href="#">edit</a>
crazypeople	99	<a href="#">edit</a>
fooBar	123	<a href="#">edit</a>
gizmos	12	<a href="#">edit</a>
maniacs	44	<a href="#">edit</a>

Page: 1/1

Note that you just edit the zone and click update you can edit the zones from the listing directly or clickin on edit to individually edit a zone in a larger area.

### ***Static and dynamic pages again***

When a page is accessed using `tiki-page.php?pageName=some` the page will be rendered replacing the dynamic zones by their values, if no value is found then the zone is displayed as blank. Now is where the difference between a static or a dynamic page can be noticed:

For static pages the page will be rendered and if the user wants to refresh the page to update dynamic zones the page must be reloaded by refreshing the browser as usual.

For dynamic pages the page will be automatically updated without refreshing at specified intervals (in seconds) that can be specified when editing a page. So if a page is dynamic the dynamic zones in a page will be updated without the user refreshing the window and without forcing the page to be reloaded. This is specially useful for "live" results, stock values, auction prices, etc etc.

## How dynamic pages work

So how dynamic pages work? Simple in dynamic pages an invisible "iframe" is used along with the page this invisible frame is reloaded at the interval specified as the page refresh rate. This invisible frame picks the values for dynamic zones from the database and using javascript updates the page dynamic zones without regenerating the page.

## Permissions

The following permissions can be used to control HTML pages.

<a href="#">[ All   General   Wiki   File gals   Comments   Blogs   Image gals   Forums   Comm   Games   Quizzes ]</a> <a href="#">[ Cms   FAQs   user   Chat   content templates   shoutbox   drawings   HTML pages ]</a>				
name	assigned	type	desc	action
tiki_p_edit_html_pages	n	html pages	Can edit HTML pages	<a href="#">assign</a>
tiki_p_view_html_pages	n	html pages	Can view HTML pages	<a href="#">assign</a>

## The shout box

Many times the shout box feature is qualified as the best feature of a site, other times users say it's just junk. Be your judge, test it do whatever you want with it, here it is: the Tiki shout box.

### What is the shout box?

Basically the shout box is a mixture between a graffiti wall and a chatroom, is like a chatroom where messages are refreshed only reloading the page. Basically users can send messages to the shout box and the last "n" messages are displayed. That's all, pretty simple.

In Tiki you have a two-way shout box, you can use the shout box screen and you can also use the shout box module.

### The shout box screen

The shout box screen can be used to enter messages display the last "n" messages and if you have the permission edit or remove existing messages, the shout box screen is the following one:

# Tiki ShoutBox!

## Post or edit a message

message:

## Messages

Find

<b>admin</b> at: [11:44:22] [ <a href="#">x</a> ] [ <a href="#">edit</a> ] dhkahdk
<b>admin</b> at: [16:41:39] [ <a href="#">x</a> ] [ <a href="#">edit</a> ] dsda
<b>admin</b> at: [11:46:05] [ <a href="#">x</a> ] [ <a href="#">edit</a> ] ryrry
<b>admin</b> at: [11:45:32] [ <a href="#">x</a> ] [ <a href="#">edit</a> ] hello
<b>admin</b> at: [11:45:02] [ <a href="#">x</a> ] [ <a href="#">edit</a> ] Hola
<b>admin</b> at: [11:40:10] [ <a href="#">x</a> ] [ <a href="#">edit</a> ] fsfsd
<b>admin</b> at: [11:27:15] [ <a href="#">x</a> ] [ <a href="#">edit</a> ] 6
<b>admin</b> at: [11:26:48] [ <a href="#">x</a> ] [ <a href="#">edit</a> ] 8
<b>admin</b> at: [11:26:28] [ <a href="#">x</a> ] [ <a href="#">edit</a> ]

## *The shout box module*

The shout box module is more interesting because it can be used as a normal module following the user across all the site sections. The shout box module is similar to the following:



Users can send messages, see the last "n" messages ("n" is here the number of rows for the shout box module) and if you have the permission you can remove messages or edit existing messages (will take you to the shout box screen).

## Permissions

The following permissions can be used to control the shout box:

[ <a href="#">All</a>   <a href="#">General</a>   <a href="#">Wiki</a>   <a href="#">File gals</a>   <a href="#">Comments</a>   <a href="#">Blogs</a>   <a href="#">Image gals</a>   <a href="#">Forums</a>   <a href="#">Comm</a>   <a href="#">Games</a>   <a href="#">Quizzes</a> ]				
[ <a href="#">Cms</a>   <a href="#">FAQs</a>   <a href="#">user</a>   <a href="#">Chat</a>   <a href="#">content templates</a>   <a href="#">shoutbox</a>   <a href="#">drawings</a>   <a href="#">HTML pages</a> ]				
name	assigned	type	desc	action
tiki_p_view_shoutbox	n	shoutbox	Can view shoutbox	<a href="#">assign</a>
tiki_p_admin_shoutbox	n	shoutbox	Can admin shoutbox (Edit/remove msgs)	<a href="#">assign</a>
tiki_p_post_shoutbox	n	shoutbox	Can post messages in shoutbox	<a href="#">assign</a>

## Spell checking

The spellchecker can be used as a “*basic*” way to verify if the content of a Tiki object is spelled correctly, the spellchecker requires a dictionary for the language you will be used to be installed. Spell checking dictionaries are distributed as Tiki add-ons and are not part of the regular Tiki distribution.

## Installing the spellchecking dictionaries

To install the spellchecking dictionaries you need to download the spellchecking dictionaries for the languages you want, each file is a zipped SQL file containing the dump of a table used for spellchecking, the table is a collection of words for the language. Install the spellchecking by adding the table to the MySQL database where Tiki is installed.

Example:

```
mysql tiki < words_en.sql -u tiki_user -p
```

Once installed the spellchecking will be able to check words for the language installed, if no dictionary files are installed for the language being used the spellchecking will just pass any word as correct.

Using the spellchecking feature

In order to enable the spellchecker you have to enable/disable spell checking for the different Wiki objects from the admin screen, you can enable the spell checker for all or just some of the objects in Tiki.

The spellchecker can be used in:


- Wiki Pages
- Articles Reviews & Submissions
- Weblogs

The spell checker in Tiki is not brilliant but it adds some help to editing, it's completely harmless and does not require pspell, aspell or similar extensions.

Example:

Editing a Wiki Page

## Edit: Information

Quicklinks	[ <a href="#">b</a>   <a href="#">i</a>   <a href="#">u</a>   <a href="#">tbl</a>   <a href="#">a</a>   <a href="#">wiki</a>   <a href="#">h1</a>   <a href="#">h2</a>   <a href="#">h3</a>   <a href="#">title</a>   <a href="#">box</a>   <a href="#">rss</a>   <a href="#">dcs</a>   <a href="#">cookie</a>   <a href="#">hr</a>   <a href="#">center</a>   <a href="#">col</a>   <a href="#">img</a> ] [ <a href="#">chars</a> ]
categorize	[ <a href="#">show categories</a> ] [ <a href="#">hide categories</a> ]
Apply template	none <input type="button" value="v"/>
Smileys	
edit	<div> <p>This some texts that can be used to test if the new spell checking rutine is working as expetecte A link right here ))Information((</p> </div>
Comment:	<input type="text"/>
Allow HTML:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Spellcheck:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input type="button" value="preview"/>
	<input type="button" value="save"/> <a href="#">cancel edit</a>

As you can see you will have a checkbox to spell check the text, if you mark this checkbox and click “preview” the previewed version of the page will be checked for spelling errors:

## Preview: Information

This some texts that can be used  
to test if the new spell **checking** rutine  
is working as **expetecte**  
A link right here Information

Miss-spelled words are marked in red, if you put the mouse cursor over a word you will se a suggestion that the spell checker offers to replace the word. If you click on the word then the spell checker will replace the firts occurrence of the word in the textarea with the suggestion.

## Preview: Information

This some texts that can be used  
to test if the new spell **checkng routine**  
is working as **expetecte**  
A link right here [Information](#)

**Spellchecker suggestions** [Close](#)  
[checking](#)  
[checks](#)  
[checked](#)  
[checker](#)  
[check](#)

## Edit: Information

From the popup tooltip you can click on a suggestion to replace the misspelled word by the suggested word in the textarea.

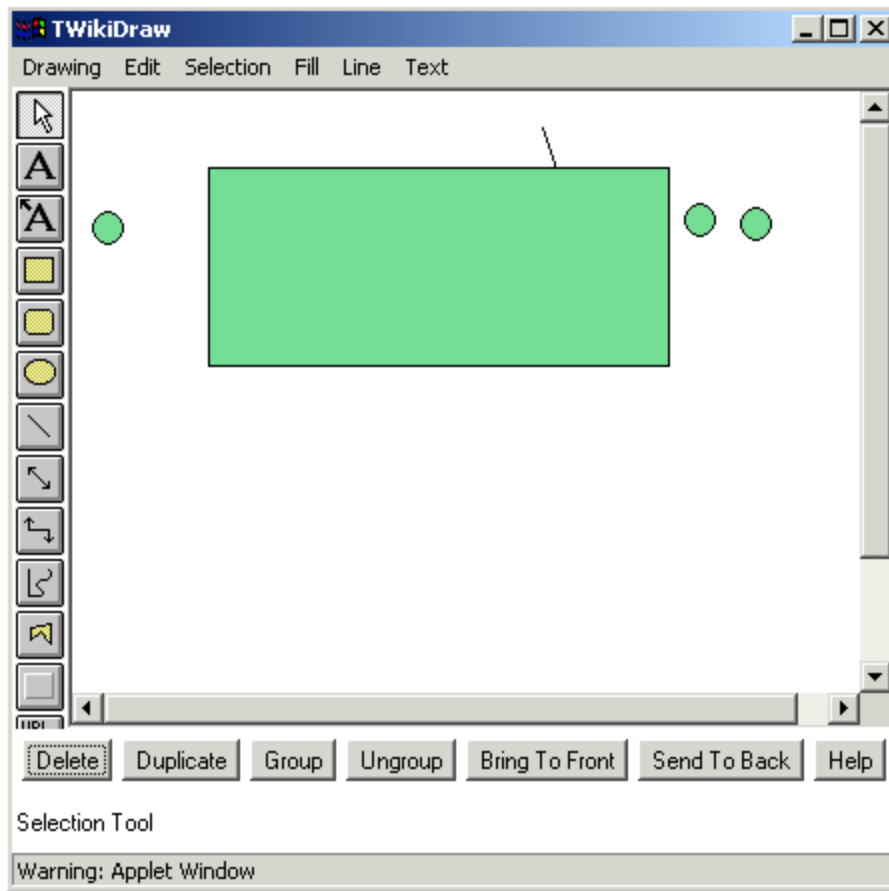
## Drawings

Drawings are created using the syntax

```
{draw name=foo}
```

Drawings can be used in wiki pages, blog posts or articles. You need the permission to be able to edit drawings.

Drawings are identified by name {draw name=foo} is the same drawing in a wiki page or an article. Drawings are viewed as normal gif pages, drawings are edited by clicking on the drawing (if you have the permission) an applet will be displayed to edit the drawing. So you need a Java-enabled browser to edit drawings.



In this applet you edit the drawing and then using save&exit the drawing is updated, tiki will try to reload the page you are viewing to refresh the drawing.

### ***Adminnistering drawings***

With the rigth permission you will be able to admin drawings, you will see a list of existing drawings and you will be able to remove the drawings that you want or edit them by clicking on the drawing thumbnail.

## Edit drawings

### Available drawings:

Thumbnail	Name
	example [x]
	pepe2 [x]

## Permissions

The following permissions apply to drawings.

<a href="#">[ All</a>   <a href="#">General</a>   <a href="#">Wiki</a>   <a href="#">File gals</a>   <a href="#">Comments</a>   <a href="#">Blogs</a>   <a href="#">Image gals</a>   <a href="#">Forums</a>   <a href="#">Comm</a>   <a href="#">Games</a>   <a href="#">Quizzes</a> ] <a href="#">[ Cms</a>   <a href="#">FAQs</a>   <a href="#">user</a>   <a href="#">Chat</a>   <a href="#">content templates</a>   <a href="#">shoutbox</a>   <a href="#">drawings</a>   <a href="#">HTML pages</a> ]				
name	assigned	type	desc	action
tiki_p_admin_drawings	n	drawings	Can admin drawings	<a href="#">assign</a>
tiki_p_edit_drawings	n	drawings	Can edit drawings	<a href="#">assign</a>

## Surveys

Surveys can be viewed as "extended" polls, for some simple surveys a poll may be enough but when you want to be more precise about your users' opinions you need to create a Survey. A survey is a collection of questions that users can fill and stats are stored to be viewed.

### Creating surveys

If you have the permission you can create a Survey clicking the admin link in the surveys section of the application menu. If you don't see a surveys section enable surveys from the features section of the main admin panel.

The following form is used to create a Survey:

## Admin surveys

[list surveys | survey stats ]

### Create/edit surveys

Name:	<input type="text"/>
Description:	<input type="text"/>
categorize	[show categories  hide categories]
Status	open <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

### Surveys

Find

ID	name	description	status	questions	action
2	dada	dasda	c	0	remove edit questions perms
1	A test survey	This Survey is a test	o	4	remove edit questions perms

Fill the information and then click the "questions" link to add questions to a Survey.

If the survey status is "closed" then users won't be able to take the survey, you can close a survey after a period of time.

### *Survey questions*

## Edit survey questions

[List surveys | survey stats | this survey stats | edit this survey | admin surveys]

### Create/edit questions for survey: A test survey

Question:	<input type="text"/>
Position:	1 <input type="button" value="v"/>
Type:	One choice <input type="button" value="v"/>
Options (if apply):	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

### Questions

Find

ID	position	question	type	options	action
1	1	What is a foo	t	3	remove edit
5	1	Pick a color	c	4	remove edit
6	1	Choose some people	m	3	remove edit
4	2	Rate bar	r	0	remove edit

You can use several question types when creating a survey the following types of questions are available:

- Short text questions
- Single choice questions
- Multiple choice questions
- Rate 1..5 question
- Rate 1..10 question

You should select the question type, enter the question text and if the question allow options type the options separated by commas.

### Short text questions

A short text question will be displayed as an input text box, users can type some text. Tiki will store all the user answers to the question and list them in the stats (if two users enter the same text it will be displayed only once indicating the

number of users that entered the text). This type of question can generate fairly long stats since it is unlikely that two users will type the same text.

### Single choice questions

A single choice question will display the options as radio buttons and the user must select only one of the options.

### Multiple choice questions

In a multiple choice question options will be displayed as checkboxes and the user will be able to click one, some or all the options.

### Rate 1..5 questions

The user will be asked to rate the question topic from 1 to 5 using radio buttons.

### Rate 1..10 questions

The user will be asked to rate the question topic from 1 to 10

Once a question is created as admin you can practice taking the survey and checking the stats, then you can clear the survey stats and get it ready to be used.

### *Listing surveys*

## Surveys

Survey stats

name	description	questions
<b>dada</b> (adm) (stats)	dasda	0
<b>A test survey</b> (adm) (stats)	This Survey is a test	4

Surveys can be listed by clicking "surveys" in the application menu.

Surveys that the user can take are displayed in bold and link to take the survey if the user already took the survey or cannot take it the survey title won't be a link. Note that users can take each survey only once but admin can take a survey as many times as he wants. If you allow anonymous users to take surveys then users will be able to take a survey many times if they clear their cookies. If you want to enforce only one vote per user make surveys available to registered users only.

## Taking a survey

When you click on a Survey in the listing you will be able to fill the Survey, the questions will be displayed and you can fill them.

### A test survey

This Survey is a test

What is a foo

Pick a color

☐ blue  
☐ green  
☐ white  
☐ gray

Choose some people

☐ Winki winki  
☐ Richard Nixon  
☐ Brat Favre

Rate bar

1 ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ 5

## Survey stats

If you have the right permisison you can see stats for a survey stats will be displayed using the following format:

### Stats for surveys

[list surveys |survey stats |admin surveys]

### Surveys

Find

Survey	taken	Created	Last taken
dada	0	Mon 30 of Dec, 2002 [10:17 ART]	Mon 30 of Dec, 2002 [10:17 ART]
<b>A test survey</b>	5	Mon 30 of Dec, 2002 [10:17 ART]	Mon 06 of Jan, 2003 [12:12 ART]

Page: 1/1

Clicking on a survey name displays the stats for that survey's questions:

## Survey stats

### Stats for this survey Questions

What is a foo			
pepe	1	0.50	<div><div></div></div>
lijk	1	0.50	<div><div></div></div>
some	0	0.00	<div><div></div></div>

Pick a color			
blue	2	1.00	<div><div></div></div>
green	0	0.00	<div><div></div></div>
white	0	0.00	<div><div></div></div>
gray	0	0.00	<div><div></div></div>

Choose some people			
Winki winki	2	0.67	<div><div></div></div>
Richard Nixon	1	0.33	<div><div></div></div>
Brat Favre	0	0.00	<div><div></div></div>

Rate bar	
Votes:	2
Average:	3.00/5

## Permissions

	name	level	type	desc
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_survey_stats	basic	surveys	Can view survey stats
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_take_survey	basic	surveys	Can take surveys
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_surveys	editors	surveys	Can admin surveys

## Trackers

Trackers are a flexible tool that can be used in Tiki for several purposes, basically a tracker is a collection of items. Each item is set of fields, you can setup which fields each tracker will use for items.

Once created you can add items, list items, modify items, remove items, assign attachments to items or comment items if you have the permission.

Trackers can be used for:

- Bug tracking
- Feature requests for your site
- Support requests
- Buying orders
- News
- Other workflows
- Etc

## ***Creating trackers***

A tracker is created from the admin trackers link in the trackers section of the application menu. The following screen is used to create a tracker:

## Admin trackers

[List trackers | Admin trackers ]

### Create/edit trackers

Name:	<input type="text"/>
Description:	<input type="text"/>
Show status when listing tracker items?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Show creation date when listing tracker items?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Show lastModif date when listing tracker items?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tracker items allow comments?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tracker items allow attachments?	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

## **Adding fields to a tracker**

To make a tracker usable you need to add some fields to the tracker. There's a field that is always added whihc is the status it is used to check if a tracker's item is opened or closed.

To admin fields click the fields link from the trackers listing in the admin trackers screen.

## Admin tracker: A new tracker

[List trackers | Admin trackers | Edit this tracker | View this tracker items ]

### Edit tracker fields

Name:	<input type="text"/>
Type:	checkbox <input type="button" value="v"/>
Is column visible when listing tracker items?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Column links to edit/view item?	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

### Tracker fields

Find

name	type	isMain	Tbl vis	action
Assigned	g	n	y	remove edit
Title	t	y	y	remove edit
Type	d	n	y	remove edit
User	u	n	y	remove edit

To add a field indicate the name, type and options (if apply).

You can use the following field types:

- Text input
- Textarea input
- Drop down combo (enter options separated by commas)
- Checkbox (on/off fields)
- Date/time field
- User (selectable user from the list of site's users)
- Group (selectable group from the list of site's groups)

One of the fields in the tracker must be the "main" field, the main field will be used as a link to the item details when listing trackers. You should also indicate if the field is visible or not when listing tracker items. If a tracker has a lot of fields you shouldn't make all the fields visible from the item listing.

## Using a tracker

You can see a list of trackers clicking trackers from the application menu.

### Trackers

name	description	created	last modif	items
<b>gfg</b>	fgdfgddf	Mon 06 of Jan, 2003 [10:44 ART]	Mon 06 of Jan, 2003 [10:44 ART]	0
<b>Cosa</b>	La cosa	Fri 20 of Dec, 2002 [12:30 ART]	Fri 27 of Dec, 2002 [18:20 ART]	7
<b>Kosakoff</b>	Lallala	Thu 19 of Dec, 2002 [17:47 ART]	Thu 02 of Jan, 2003 [18:50 ART]	10
<b>A new tracker</b>	Tetsing the trackers	Wed 18 of Dec, 2002 [11:37 ART]	Thu 02 of Jan, 2003 [18:54 ART]	5
<b>This is the test</b>	Cosa	Tue 17 of Dec, 2002 [15:37 ART]	Wed 18 of Dec, 2002 [16:37 ART]	11

Page: 1/1

1

Clicking on a tracker name will take you to the list of tracker items.

### Tracker: A new tracker

[List trackers] [Admin trackers] [Edit this tracker] [Monitor]

Tetsing the trackers

#### Insert new item

Title	<input type="text"/>
User	None <input type="button" value="v"/>
Type	white <input type="button" value="v"/>
Assigned	None <input type="button" value="v"/>
	<input type="button" value="save"/>

## Tracker Items

Filters	
Status	any ▼
Title	<input type="text"/>
User	any ▼
Type	any ▼
Assigned	any ▼
<input type="button" value="filter"/>	

Status	Title	User	Type	Assigned	created	lastModif	coms
o	<b>pepepito</b> [x]	a	black		Thu 02 of Jan, 2003 [18:54 ART]	Thu 02 of Jan, 2003 [18:54 ART]	0
o	<b>pepepito</b> [x]	a	black		Thu 02 of Jan, 2003 [18:54 ART]	Thu 02 of Jan, 2003 [18:54 ART]	0
o	<b>khjk</b> [x]	admin	black	Anonymous	Wed 18 of Dec, 2002 [11:52 ART]	Thu 19 of Dec, 2002 [16:46 ART]	5
o	<b>hola2</b> [x]		white		Wed 18 of Dec, 2002 [11:47 ART]	Wed 18 of Dec, 2002 [11:51 ART]	0
o	<b>jkljl</b> [x]	admin	white	test	Wed 18 of Dec, 2002 [11:47 ART]	Thu 19 of Dec, 2002 [16:45 ART]	2

In this screen you can see all the items a tracker has, order items by creation, last modification or status. Filter items according to field values. Add an item or modify it.

To add an item use the form at the top of the screen:

### Insert new item

Title	<input type="text"/>
User	None ▼
Type	white ▼
Assigned	None ▼
<input type="button" value="save"/>	

Items will always be added with status = open

To modify an item click the item field title (the bold one) if there's no bold field then go to the admin screen and make some field the "main" field.

The following screen is used to view and item or modify it (if you have the permission)

## Editing tracker item

[List trackers | Admin trackers | Edit this tracker | Monitor | View this tracker items ]

### Edit item

Status	open ▼
Title	khjk
User	admin ▼
Type	black ▼
Assigned	Anonymous ▼
<input type="button" value="save"/>	

### Add a comment

Title:	<input type="text"/>
Comment:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="save"/>	

Note that if you enabled attachments or comments you can add comments or attachments to a tracker item.

## Add a comment

Title:	<input type="text"/>
Comment:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="save"/>	

## Comments

**dasda** by admin [edit|remove]  
 posted on: Thu 19 of Dec, 2002 [17:18 ART]  
 aaa

**kjh** by admin [edit|remove]  
 posted on: Thu 19 of Dec, 2002 [17:15 ART]  
 jkhjkhj

**kjh** by admin [edit|remove]  
 posted on: Thu 19 of Dec, 2002 [17:14 ART]  
 jkhjkhj

**kjh** by admin [edit|remove]  
 posted on: Thu 19 of Dec, 2002 [17:14 ART]  
 jkhjkhj

**kjh** by admin [edit|remove]  
 posted on: Thu 19 of Dec, 2002 [17:13 ART]  
 jkhjkhj

## Attach a file to this item

Upload file:	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Browse..."/>	comment:	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="attach"/>
--------------	----------------------	------------------------------------------	----------	----------------------	---------------------------------------

## Attachments

name	uploaded	size	dls	desc
No attachments for this item				

## Assigning items to users

If an item has a field with type "user" or "group" tracker items will be assignable to users/groups on the site. This is useful in any workflow situation when a user must know what items he has assigned to himself or his group.

Assigned items with open status will be displayed in the user preferences screen:

Assigned items	
khjk at tracker A new tracker	(edit)
kljl at tracker A new tracker	(edit)

## ***Monitoring items***

Users can monitor a tracker or a tracker item, when monitoring a tracker an email will be sent whenever an item is added or changed in the tracker. When an item is being monitored an email is sent when the item is modified. This is again very useful in workflows.

## ***Permissions***

The following permissions can be used to control trackers. Note that you can set permissions globally or per-tracker level clicking the "perms" link from the tracker listing in the tracker admin screen.

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_modify_tracker_items	registered ▼	trackers	Can change tracker items
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_comment_tracker_items	basic ▼	trackers	Can insert comments for tracker items
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_created_tracker_items	editors ▼	trackers	Can create new items for trackers
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_trackers	editors ▼	trackers	Can admin trackers
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_trackers	basic ▼	trackers	Can view trackers
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_attach_trackers	registered ▼	trackers	Can attach files to tracker items
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_create_tracker_items	registered ▼	trackers	Can create new items for trackers

### ***Example a tracker to review movies***

The obvious example will be to create a tracker to track bugs or support requests so we are going to show you an example of trackers creating a tracker to review movies.

Our tracker will be used to track reviews of movies with information about each movie, comments and why not attachments of pictures or posters for the movie :-)

Let's start by creating the tracker:

## Create/edit trackers

Name:	Movie reviews
Description:	Movie reviews from our site's users.
Show status when listing tracker items?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Show creation date when listing tracker items?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Show lastModif date when listing tracker items?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tracker items allow comments?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Tracker items allow attachments?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

Now setup the tracker fields, we'll be using the following fields:

name : a text field with the movie name

comment: a textarea with a comment

rating: a combo with options from 1 to 10 to rate the movie

reviewer: name of reviewer

We'll use the created field but we are not interested in the last modified field. You can add other fields if you want.

## Tracker fields

Find

name	type	isMain	Tbl vis	action
author	t	n	y	remove edit
comment	a	n	n	remove edit
Rating	d	n	y	remove edit
Title	t	y	y	remove edit

Now we can review a movie!

## Insert new item

Title	<input type="text" value="The two towers"/>
author	<input type="text" value="Garland Foster"/>
Rating	10 <input type="button" value="v"/>
comment	<input type="text" value="This is an amazing movie!!!.... blah blah"/>
<input type="button" value="save"/>	

And list reviews! Using filters and so.

## Tracker Items

Filters					
Status	any <input type="button" value="v"/>				
Title	<input type="text"/>				
author	<input type="text"/>				
Rating	any <input type="button" value="v"/>				
<input type="button" value="filter"/>					

Title	author	Rating	created	lastModif	coms
<b>The two towers</b> [x]	Garland Foster	10	Mon 06 of Jan, 2003 [12:32 ART]	Mon 06 of Jan, 2003 [12:32 ART]	0

We can add comments or attachments to a review!

Before you decide that your Tiki application needs a new feature check if it can be done using trackers if not because of a slight modification let us know it and maybe we can improve the trackers system.

## Newsletters

A newsletter is an email (generally HTML based) sent to a group of users interested in some subject from time to time. Tiki has a newsletters section where you can setup and send newsletters.

### *Creating newsletters*

You can create a newsletter from clicking the admin link in the newsletters section of the application menu.

## Admin newsletters

[list newsletters | send newsletters ]

### Create/edit newsletters

Name:	<input type="text"/>
Description:	<input type="text"/>
Users can subscribe any email addresss	<input type="checkbox"/>
Frequency	7 days <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

### newsletters

Find

ID	name	description	users	editions	last sent	action
2	Otro	Otro	2 (1)	0	Thu 02 of Jan, 2003 [11:27 ART]	remove edit subscriptions perms
1	An example newsletter	Foo bar	2 (1)	0	Thu 02 of Jan, 2003 [11:27 ART]	remove edit subscriptions perms

Page: 1/1

Creating a newsletter is very simple, then you should make your users aware of the existence of the newsletter to let them subscribe, you can use several tiki mechanisms like modules, banners, dynamic content sections or similar to communicate the existence of the newsletter to the users.

### ***Listing newsletters***

Clicking the newsletters link in the application mneu lists the available newsletters. The user can subscribe to a newsletter by clicking it. If the user has the permission and the newsletter admits it the user can subscribe an email address different than the one he is using on the site, sometimes users with many email accounts want to deliver newsletters to a specific account instead of his main email account.

# Newsletters

## newsletters

Find

name	description
Otro	Otro
An example newsletter	Foo bar

Page: 1/1

1

Once subscribed the user will NOT receive the newsletter until he confirms his subscription. Tiki will send the user email a message asking him to click a link to enable the subscription. This prevents users or admins from spamming users by adding them to the newsletter.

### ***Subscribing and unsubscribing***

The emails that tiki send to newsletter users to confirm a subscription, welcome a user or say bye bye are in the directory templates/mails, you can edit them as you want.

Once a subscription is confirmed the user will be able to unsubscribe by following a link that is automatically send when a newsletter is sent to the user.

### ***Sending newsletters***

As admin you can see the list of existing newsletters and the number of susbcribers (confirmed between parenthesis). Whenever admin wants he can send a newsletter to the confirmed users:

## Prepare a newsletter to be sent

Subject:	<input type="text"/>
Newsletter:	Otro <input type="button" value="v"/>
Apply template	none <input type="button" value="v"/>
Data:	<div></div>
<input type="button" value="Preview"/>	
<input type="button" value="Send Newsletters"/>	

A newsletter is just an HTML page that will be send by email. You can see a history of previously sent newsletters in this screen and you can reuse an already sent newsletter to send a new edition of the newsletter.

Tiki will ask for confirmation before sending the newsletter indicating how many users will receive the newsletter and showing a preview of the newslettet.

You can define templates for newsletters using the content templates system and then selecting the template from the send newsletters screen.

## Administration

So you are the admin user, you are the one that can decide what other users can or can't do and how the application will be used by your users, Tiki allows a lot of flexibility that requires just a little reading.

Tiki can be configured to be a Wiki, a CMS system, a portal, a Weblog, many weblogs, a community site, a combination or whatever your imagination needs. Any configuration can be constructed using the admin screens and the permission system and while it is a very flexible and powerful system it can be learned in just a few minutes and it will be easy to use.

## ***Understanding users and groups***

The most important part of the Tiki administration is understanding the permission system used by Tiki, basically the rules are:

- Administrators can create and edit groups.
- Users can be assigned to one or several groups.
- Permissions are assigned to groups, NOT users.

There're two pre-defined groups:

- Anonymous : Users that are not logged automatically belong to the anonymous group.
- Registered group: Users logged in automatically belong to this group.

Tiki has the option to allow users to register themselves using the application or not, so registered users can or can't be trusted depending on that setting.

## **User administration**

The user administration screen allows you to administer users:

You can create new users (useful if users can't register themselves), you can remove users and you can assign groups to a particular users. You can find users by login name using the find button at the top of the listing (it will act as a filter)

## Admin users

### Add a new user

User:	<input type="text"/>
Pass:	<input type="password"/>
Again:	<input type="password"/>
Email:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Add"/>	

### Users

Find

name	email	last_login	Groups	action
admin		Tuesday 12 of November, 2002 [14:58:17]	Anonymous	delete assign group view info

### Group administration

The group administration screen is similar.

## Admin groups

### Add a new group

Group:	<input type="text"/>
Desc:	<input type="text"/>
Include:	<div> test  Registered  Grupo de pruebas  Anonymous </div>
<input type="button" value="Add"/>	

### List of existing groups

Find

name	desc	Includes	Permissions	action
test	This is a test group		tiki_p_create_file_galleries(x) tiki_p_download_files(x) tiki_p_take_quiz(x) tiki_p_upload_files(x) tiki_p_upload_images(x) tiki_p_view(x) tiki_p_view_file_gallery(x) tiki_p_view_image_gallery(x) tiki_p_view_quiz_stats(x)	<a href="#">delete</a> <a href="#">assign perms</a>

You can create groups, delete groups, find groups by name/description and you can assign permissions to a particular group clicking `assign_perms` in the row of the group. Note that by default the Registered and Anonymous groups are predefined.

### Including groups in groups

Note that when you create a group you can indicate that the groups includes other groups, if you do so then the new group will "inherit" the permissions from included groups (but they won't be displayed) so you can extend a group by including it and adding some permissions.

You can have a hierarchy of groups where descendant groups always inherit their parents permissions. Sites with a structure similar to

Anonymous -> Registered -> Paid -> VIP

Or something like that can use this feature to quickly define the groups permissions.

### Assigning users to groups.

Create a group, for example test and create a user, for example foo, then from the user administration screen click assign\_groups for the user. You will be able to assign groups to that particular user a user can belong to as many groups as you want.

### Assigning permissions to groups.

From the group administration screen click on assign\_perms for a particular group and you will see a screen divided in two parts, the first one shows information about the group and assigned permissions while the second part can be used to manage permissions per category. We'll explain each part next.

In this section you can see information for the group that you selected as name, description and permissions assigned.

Then you can create a new permission level and you can if you want assign all the permissions in some level to the

group. Or remove all the permissions in some level from this group. As you can see permissions are organized in levels, by default Tiki comes with 4 pre-arranged levels that you can modify as you want:

- Basic: permissions for anonymous users, basic site usage
- Registered: permissions for logged users
- Editor: Permissions to site editors can manipulate content.
- Admin: Permissions for admins only can be dangerous if missused

In the second part of the screen you can assign permissions and change levels.

[ All | General | Wiki | File gals | Comments | Blogs | Image gals | Forums | Comm | Games | Quizzes ]

[ Cms | FAQs | User | Chat | Content Templates | ShoutBox | Drawings | HTML pages | Trackers ]

[ Surveys | Webmail | Newsletters | Messages | DSN | Directory ]

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admi_games	editors	games	Can admin games
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_games	editors	games	Can admin games

The top section is used to select a permission category, for example games, forums, faqs, etc. All can be used to see all the permissions at once (The screen will be VERY long). For

each category permissions will be displayed the checkboxes indicate if the permission is assigned to the group or not. You can assign/remove permissions using the checkboxes, you can also change the level of any permission using the dropdown. In this way you can re-classify the permissions as you need and then easily assign all level-x permissions to a group whenever you want.

When a user belongs to more than one group the permissions are accumulated.

## Permissions

Permissions are what groups CAN do, note that permissions always ALLOW groups to do things, there're no restrictive permissions in Tiki because they can conflict if the user has more than one group.

The list of permissions that you can assign to groups are:

## General permissions

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin	admin	tiki	Administrator, can manage users groups and permissions and all the weblog features
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_use_HTML	editors	tiki	Can use HTML in pages
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_edit_templates	admin	tiki	Can edit site templates
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_dynamic	editors	tiki	Can admin the dynamic content system
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_banners	admin	tiki	Administrator, can admin banners
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_vote_poll	basic	tiki	Can vote polls
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_stats	basic	tiki	Can view site stats
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_edit_cookies	editors	tiki	Can admin cookies
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_play_games	basic	tiki	Can play games
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_referer_stats	editors	tiki	Can view referer stats
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_mailin	admin	tiki	Can admin mail-in accounts
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_edit_languages	editors	tiki	Can edit translations and create new languages
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_eph_admin	editor	tiki	Can admin ephemerides

## Wiki permissions

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_edit	basic	wiki	Can edit pages
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view	basic	wiki	Can view page/pages
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_remove	editors	wiki	Can remove
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_rollback	registered	wiki	Can rollback pages
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_wiki	editors	wiki	Can admin the wiki
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_wiki_attach_files	basic	wiki	Can attach files to wiki pages
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_wiki_admin_attachments	editors	wiki	Can admin attachments to wiki pages
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_wiki_view_attachments	basic	wiki	Can view wiki attachments and download
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_upload_picture	basic	wiki	Can upload pictures to wiki pages
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_edit_structures	editors	wiki	Can create and edit structures
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_rename	editor	wiki	Can rename pages
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_lock	editor	wiki	Can lock pages

## Image gallery permissions

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_galleries	editors ▼	image galleries	Can admin Image Galleries
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_file_galleries	editors ▼	image galleries	Can admin file galleries
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_create_galleries	editors ▼	image galleries	Can create image galleries
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_upload_images	registered ▼	image galleries	Can upload images
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_image_gallery	basic ▼	image galleries	Can view image galleries
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_batch_upload_images	editors ▼	image galleries	Can upload zip files with images

## Articles & Submissions permissions

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_edit_article	editors ▼	cms	Can edit articles
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_remove_article	editors ▼	cms	Can remove articles
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_read_article	basic ▼	cms	Can read articles
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_submit_article	basic ▼	cms	Can submit articles
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_edit_submission	editors ▼	cms	Can edit submissions
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_remove_submission	editors ▼	cms	Can remove submissions
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_approve_submission	editors ▼	cms	Can approve submissions
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_cms	editors ▼	cms	Can admin the cms

## Blog permissions

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_create_blogs	editors ▼	blogs	Can create a blog
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_blog_post	registered ▼	blogs	Can post to a blog
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_blog_admin	editors ▼	blogs	Can admin blogs
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_read_blog	basic ▼	blogs	Can read blogs

## File Galleries

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_create_file_galleries	editors ▼	file galleries	Can create file galleries
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_upload_files	registered ▼	file galleries	Can upload files
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_download_files	basic ▼	file galleries	Can download files
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_file_gallery	basic ▼	file galleries	Can view file galleries
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_batch_upload_files	editors ▼	file galleries	Can upload zip files with files

## Comments

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_post_comments	basic ▾	comments	Can post new comments
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_read_comments	basic ▾	comments	Can read comments
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_remove_comments	editors ▾	comments	Can delete comments
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_vote_comments	registered ▾	comments	Can vote comments
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_edit_comments	editors ▾	comments	Can edit all comments

## Forums

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_forum	editors ▾	forums	Can admin forums
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_forum_post	basic ▾	forums	Can post in forums
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_forum_read	basic ▾	forums	Can read forums
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_forum_vote	registered ▾	forums	Can vote comments in forums
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_forum_post_topic	basic ▾	forums	Can start threads in forums

## Chat

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_chat	editors ▾	chat	Administrator, can create channels remove channels etc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_chat	basic ▾	chat	Can use the chat system

## Communications

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_send_pages	registered ▾	comm	Can send pages to other sites
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_sendme_pages	registered ▾	comm	Can send pages to this site
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_received_pages	editors ▾	comm	Can admin received pages
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_send_articles	editors ▾	comm	Can send articles to other sites
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_sendme_articles	registered ▾	comm	Can send articles to this site
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_received_articles	editors ▾	comm	Can admin received articles

## FAQs

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_faqs	editors ▾	faqs	Can admin faqs
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_faqs	basic ▾	faqs	Can view faqs
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_suggest_faq	basic ▾	faqs	Can suggest faq questions

## Users

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_cache_bookmarks	registered ▼	user	Can cache user bookmarks
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_create_bookmarks	registered ▼	user	Can create user bookmarks
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_configure_modules	registered ▼	user	Can configure modules
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_tasks	registered ▼	user	Can use tasks
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_newsreader	registered ▼	user	Can use the newsreader
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_notepad	registered ▼	user	Can use the notepad
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_userfiles	registered ▼	user	Can upload personal files
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_usermenu	registered ▼	user	Can create items in personal menu
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_minical	registered ▼	user	Can use the mini event calendar

## Content Templates

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_edit_content_templates	editors ▼	content templates	Can edit content templates
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_use_content_templates	editors ▼	content templates	Can use content templates

## Shout box

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_shoutbox	basic ▼	shoutbox	Can view shoutbox
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_shoutbox	editors ▼	shoutbox	Can admin shoutbox (Edit/remove msgs)
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_post_shoutbox	basic ▼	shoutbox	Can post messages in shoutbox

## Drawings

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_drawings	editors ▼	drawings	Can admin drawings
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_edit_drawings	basic ▼	drawings	Can edit drawings

## Surveys

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_survey_stats	basic ▼	surveys	Can view survey stats
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_take_survey	basic ▼	surveys	Can take surveys
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_surveys	editors ▼	surveys	Can admin surveys

## Trackers

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_modify_tracker_items	registered ▼	trackers	Can change tracker items
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_comment_tracker_items	basic ▼	trackers	Can insert comments for tracker items
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_created_tracker_items	editors ▼	trackers	Can create new items for trackers
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_trackers	editors ▼	trackers	Can admin trackers
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_trackers	basic ▼	trackers	Can view trackers
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_attach_trackers	registered ▼	trackers	Can attach files to tracker items
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_create_tracker_items	registered ▼	trackers	Can create new items for trackers

## Newsletters

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_newsletters	editors ▼	newsletters	Can admin newsletters
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_subscribe_newsletters	basic ▼	newsletters	Can subscribe to newsletters
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_subscribe_email_newslet	editors ▼	newsletters	Can subscribe any email to newsletters
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_subscribe_email	editors ▼	newsletters	Can subscribe any email to newsletters

## Webmail

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_use_webmail	registered ▼	webmail	Can use webmail

## Quizzes

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_quizzes	editors ▼	quizzes	Can admin quizzes
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_take_quiz	basic ▼	quizzes	Can take quizzes
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_quiz_stats	basic ▼	quizzes	Can view quiz stats
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_user_results	editors ▼	quizzes	Can view user quiz results

## Directory

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_directory	editors ▼	directory	Can admin the directory
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_directory_cats	editors ▼	directory	Can admin directory categories
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_submit_link	basic ▼	directory	Can submit sites to the directory
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_autosubmit_link	editors ▼	directory	Submitted links are valid
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_validate_links	editors ▼	directory	Can validate submitted links
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_directory_sites	editors ▼	directory	Can admin directory sites
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_directory	basic ▼	directory	Can use the directory

## HTML pages

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_edit_html_pages	editors ▼	html pages	Can edit HTML pages
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_view_html_pages	basic ▼	html pages	Can view HTML pages

## User messages

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_messages	registered ▼	messu	Can use the messaging system
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_broadcast	admin ▼	messu	Can broadcast messages

## DSNs

Permissions are created dynamically see the Wiki SQL plugin for information

## Permissions for individual users

What if you want to give a specific user some permissions? Just create an artificial group, assign the user to that group and give the group the permissions that you need.

## Individual permissions

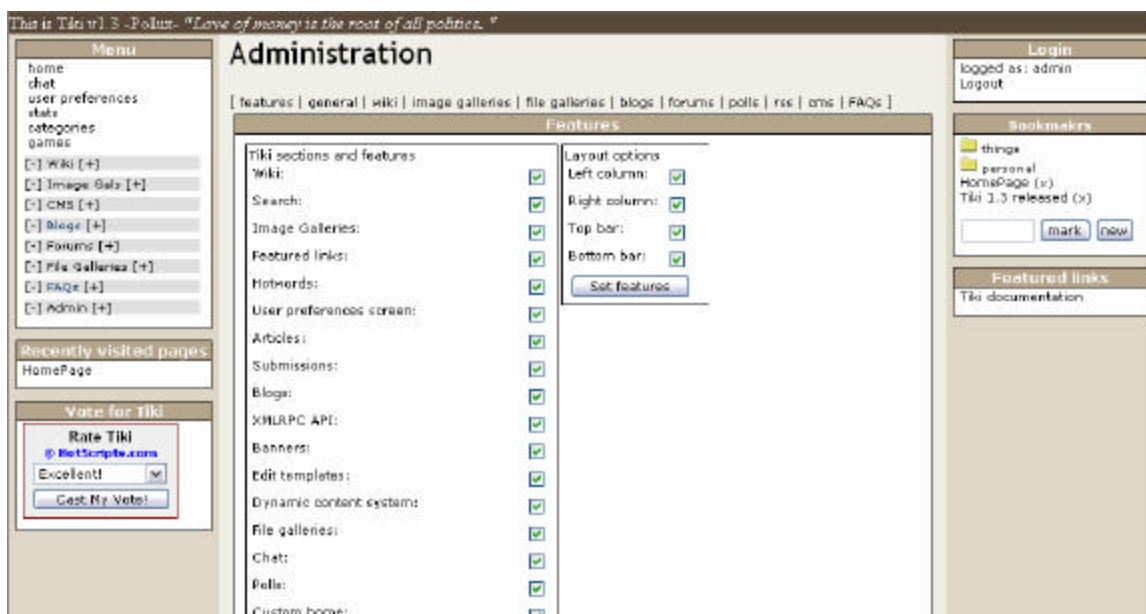
As we explained you can set-up individual permissions for some Tiki objects, when assigning individual permissions the permissions you can assign are the same you have in the global permissions screen, once an object has individual permissions only the individual permissions apply to the object and not the global permissions.

The following objects accept individual permissions:

- Wiki pages
- Image galleries
- File galleries
- Forums
- Weblogs
- Newsletters
- Surveys
- Quizzes
- Trackers

## ***The general administration panel***

The admin panel is where several settings about Tiki can be set, only users with admin permission can enter this screen, you can access it using the admin link from the Admin menu box.



The admin panel is divided in sections which are:

- Features
- General preferences and settings
- Wiki settings
- Image Galleries settings
- File Galleries settings
- CMS settings
- Blog settings
- Forums settings
- RSS feeds settings

## Features

[There're just too many features to show a screenshot of the feature selection panel please imagine a large list of checkboxes that can be used to enable/disable different features]

The features panel can be used to set-up which features will be enabled and which features will be disabled in the application. When you disable a feature all the screens and modules related to the feature will produce an error screen if accessed. This allows you to use Tiki for your needs without configuring the rest of the application if you don't want to.

The features are:

- Wiki: Enables/disables the wiki
- Search: Enables/disables the search box and search results screen.
- Search stats: If enabled then stats will be recorded for terms that users search on your site. As admin you will be able to see the stats.
- Image galleries: enables/disables image galleries, gallery creation, image uploading, image rankings etc.
- Featured links: enables/disables featured links.
- Hotwords: enables/disables hotwords, when hotwords is enabled the Wiki pages are parsed and some words are automatically converted to links, if you have admin permissions you can edit this words from the admin hotwords screen.
- User preferences: enables/disables a screen where the users can setup their preferences, for example the theme.
- Articles: Enables disables articles.
- Submissions: Enables/disables submissions/
- Blogs: Enables disables blogs.
- XMLRPC API: Enables/disables the Blogger XMLRPC API that can be activated to allow Blogger compatible applications to manage tiki weblogs. Note that the API is carefully implemented to respect Tiki permissions so it is NOT a security compromise to enable this feature it is as safe as the rest of the site.
- Banners: Enables/disables the banner system
- Edit templates: Enables/disables dynamic template editing
- Dynamic content system: Enables/disables the dynamic content system
- File galleries: Enables/disables file galleries
- Chat: Enables/disables the chat system
- Polls: Enables/disables the polls system

- Custom Home: Enables/disables the custom home, if enabled then a custom home page is an option to be used as a home page. (more in the section about setting the home page)
- Forums: Enables/disables the forums system
- Communications: Enables/disables the communications system
- Categories: Enables/disables categories
- FAQs: enables/disables FAQs
- Users can configure modules: Registered users with the right permission can configure modules to their needs
- User bookmarks: Enables/disables user bookmarks
- Stats: Enables/disables site stats
- Games: Enables disables the games section
- Quizzes: Enables disables quizzes
- Smileys: Enables disables the use of smileys
- Shout box: Enables/disables the shout box
- Drawings: Enables/disables the use of drawings
- HTML pages: Enables/disables HTML pages
- Referrer stats : Enables/disables referer stats.
- Trackers: Enables/disables trackers
- Surveys: Enables/disables surveys
- Webmail: Enables/disables webmail
- Newsletters: Enables/disables newsletters
- Directory : Enables/disables the directory
- User messages : Enables/disables user messages
- User tasks : Enables/disables user tasks
- Newsreader : Enables/disables the newsreader
- Contact : Enables/disabled the contac-us feature
- User notepad: Enables/disables the user notepad
- User files: Enables/disables user files
- Mini calendar : Enables/disables the user calendar
- Ephemerides : Enables/disables the ephemerides
- Theme Control : Enables/disables the theme control center

## Layout options

General Layout options

Left column: ☒

Right column: ☒

Top bar: ☒

Bottom bar: ☒

Layout per section: ☐

Admin layout per section

This part of the features section can be used to control the look and feel (layout) of your Tiki site, basically you can enable/disable the columns, the top bar (where the Tiki version is indicated) and the footer. If you want a 1-column layout

this is the way to go without changing anything in the code.

Some users asked if there's a need to display the copyright message for Tiki the answer is a clear NO, you can use Tiki for whatever you want and you can customize to look exactly as you want.

Note that you may want to enable the layout per section option, when this is enabled the page layout can be individually configured for different Tiki sections, for example you may want to remove the right column only in the forums, then enable the layout-per section option and use the Layout administration screen to select individual layouts for sections. The layout administration option is like the following one:

## Admin layout

[wiki | galleries | file\_galleries | cms | blogs | forums | chat | categories | games | faqs | html\_pages | quizzes | surveys | webmail | trackers | featured\_links | directory | user\_messages | newsreader | mytiki ]

### wiki layout options

wiki layout options

Left column: ☒

Right column: ☒

Top bar: ☒

Bottom bar: ☒

[wiki | galleries | file\_galleries | cms | blogs | forums | chat | categories | games | faqs | html\_pages | quizzes | surveys | webmail | trackers | featured\_links | directory | user\_messages | newsreader | mytiki ]

### galleries layout options

galleries layout options

Left column: ☒

Right column: ☒

Top bar: ☒

Bottom bar: ☒

You can select an individual layout for the following sections:

- Wiki
- Image galleries
- File galleries
- CMS (Articles)
- Blogs
- Forums

- Chat
- Games
- Categories
- FAQs
- HTML pages
- Quizzes
- Surveys
- Webmail
- Trackers
- Featured links
- Directory
- User messages
- Newsreader
- MyTiki

## **General preferences and settings**

Home page:	Custom home	
Use URI as Home Page:	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Open external links in new window:	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Use gzipped output:	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Display modules to all groups always:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Use cache for external pages:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Use cache for external images:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Count admin pageviews:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Maximum number of records in listings:	20	
Use direct pagination links:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Theme:	default2.css	
Slideshows theme:	slidestyle.css	
Language:	en	
Server name (for absolute URIs):	luigi.melpomenia.com.ar	
Browser title:	Tiki's site	
Server time zone:	UTC : Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) GMT+00:00 Map	
Displayed time zone:	America/Jujuy : Argentine Time (ART) GMT-03:00	
Long date format:	%A %d of %B, %Y	Help
Short date format:	%a %d of %b, %Y	Help
Long time format:	%H:M:%S %Z	Help
Short time format:	%H:%M %Z	Help
<input type="button" value="Change preferences"/>		

This panel controls settings and preferences generic to Tiki. The settings are explained below:

### *Home Page:*

#### **(How to set the site's home page)**

This is a very interesting feature, with this setting you can select what to use as the Home Page of tiki, the Home page has the following properties:

- It's where you go if you click the "home" link in the main menu
- It's where you go after you log in
- It's where you go if you use <http://some.com/tiki/index.php> or <http://some.com/tiki/>
- It's where you go if you click the logo in the logo module.

You have many options for the home page:

- The wiki home page.  
If selected then the home page will be the Wiki Page selected as home page. (See selecting the wiki home page in the wiki panel)
- The Articles Home Page  
If selected the home page will be the articles home page where you can see the last “n” articles entered
- A Blog  
If selected then the home page will be a vweblog that you have to select in the weblog settings part of this screen. (if you don't set it or no blogs exist please don't select this option as the home page it will break the site)
- An Image gallery  
If selected the home page will be an image gallery that you can select in the Image galleries setting section of this screen, if you don't have any galleries please don't select this option because it won't work at all.
- A file gallery  
If selected the home page will be a file gallery that can be selected in the file galleries settings section of this screen. If you don't have any file galleries please don't select this options or the home page will be broken.
- A forum  
If selected the home page will be the list of topics of a forum selected from the forums setting section of this screen.
- A custom home page  
If selected the home page will be a customized home page, the customized home page is called using tiki-custom\_home.php which does nothing but display the tiki-custom\_home.tpl template so you can edit the template and put whatever HTML you want for your home page with images, Inks to wiki pages, links to forums, anything you want. This is a neat way to make your Tiki site very personal, design your home as you want and provide links to different Tiki sections from there. Maybe you can even use some flash (ouchi!!) ☺
- Any URL  
If you select this option then the URL entered at the box will be used as your home page this is very useful to set for example an HTML page as the home page tiki-page.php?pageName=foo or something similar.

Os

Indicates the operating system for this Tiki system if windows is selected then some specific functions that are Unix-related and can't be disabled without any problems are not used. This is just to make sure that your tiki site will work no functionality will be lost.

*Open external links in a new window:*

If checked then links to external pages will be opened in a new window (please note that featuredLinks and hotwords links don't use this property. This property applies only to external links in wiki pages.

*Use gzipped output:*

Tiki will try to send gzipped content to browsers accepting compressed content. Can speed up a lot the access to your site.

*Display modules to all groups always:*

In the admin modules screen when you assign a module to the left or right sidebar you can select which groups will be able to see the module. If this box is checked then modules will be always displayed to all users without considering their group. Use this feature if you are not interested in having modules that are displayed only to specific groups. (Note: The admin menu module is displayed only to admins)

*Use cache for external pages:*

If checked then Tiki will try to cache external links to make them available if the site goes offline or the page is changed. If you are running Tiki in an intranet or you don't want the cache feature you can disable the feature here.

*Use cache for external images:*

When this option is checked Tiki will download images, store them in the database and replace their URLs by a local one. This allows you to always have images available even if they were taken from a external site and the site goes offline.

<p>Note: You may need permission according to your local law to cache or download pages or images from external sites.</p>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

*Count admin page views:*

If not checked then admin page views are not counted for the site statistics.

#### *Maximum number of records in listings*

This option sets the maximum number of records that will be displayed in listings, there're several listings in Tiki, when the listing would show more than this number of rows then links to prev/next pages are displayed (pagination is used).

#### *Use direct pagination links*

If enabled then direct links to pages will be displayed in listings. If not enabled only next/prev buttons are provided.

#### *Theme*

This option sets the theme of the application, please note that if the user preferences feature is enabled then users can choose their own theme overriding this setting. CSS files are located in the styles directory.

#### *Slideshows theme*

The CSS file used for slideshows, found in styles/slideshows

#### *Language*

This option selects the language that the site will use.

#### *Server Name*

The server name that tiki will use to build absolute URLs, example [http://SERVER\\_NAME/](http://SERVER_NAME/). Usually the default is ok but in some special configurations you may want to change it. Localhost is a good value if you are testing tiki in your local machine.

#### *Server time zone*

Information about your server time zone

#### *Displayed time zone*

Time zone used to display dates and times in tiki, can be different than the server's time zone. Note that users can configure their time zone in the user preferences screen if they don't choose to configure the time zone it will be defaulted to this value

## Date formats

Formats used for dates in Tiki. You can change them as you want.

## User registration settings

User registration and login	
Users can register:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Request passcode to register:	<input type="checkbox"/> pepe
Validate users by email:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Remind passwords by email:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Reg users can change theme:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Reg users can change language:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Store plaintext passwords:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use challenge/response authentication:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Force to use chars and nums in passwords:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Minimum password length:	4
Password invalid after days:	2
Allow secure (https) login:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Require secure (https) login:	<input type="checkbox"/>
HTTP server name:	
HTTP port:	80
HTTP URL prefix:	/
HTTPS server name:	
HTTPS port:	443
HTTPS URL prefix:	/
<input type="button" value="Change preferences"/>	

In this section of the admin panel you can setup several settings for your user registration and site security features. The settings are the following ones:

### *Users can register:*

If turned on then the login box will display a “register” link when the user is not logged and the user will have the option to register using a webform.

### *Request passcode to register:*

If this is enabled you have to enter a password that will be required to let user register into the system this can be used in sites where users are "invited"

or they receive a passcode after paying a fee or something like that. Semi-private or semi-public sites may enjoy this feature.

*Validate users by emails:*

If this is activated then when a user registers Tiki will send the user an email with a link that the user must use to login for the first time to Tiki. Once logged using this link the user will be validated and can login as a regular user, this feature is useful if you as an admin want to be sure that the user email addresses are correct and not fake.

*Remind passwords by email:*

If this is enabled then a link to “I forgot my password” will be displayed in the login box, the user will be able to enter its login name and Tiki will send him an email with his password.

*Reg users can change theme*

If this is enabled then registered users can configure the theme.

*Reg users can change language*

If this is enabled then registered users can configure the site’s language

*Store plaintext passwords*

If enabled then passwords are stored in clear plaintext and the remind password feature sends the user his password. If not enabled only a hash is stored and the remind password feature generates a new password and sends that password to the user.

*Use challenge-response authentication*

If enabled and the user browser supports JavaScript then passwords ARE NOT SENT across the network, instead a challenge response algorithm is used. Tiki generates a challenge code and the browser sends a response based on the challenge that tiki verifies to login the user. Challenge responses cannot be reused. This method if enabled strongly enforces the security of your user passwords and if you use it you don’t need an HTTPS connection for extra security.

*Force to use chars and numbers in passwords*

If enabled tiki will validate user passwords and reject passwords that don’t contain both letters and numbers.

### *Minimum password length*

The minimum length for a password to be accepted.

### *Passwords are invalid after days*

Tiki will enforce the user to change his password after this period.

### *Allow secure https login*

If you want to use an HTTPs connection for login enable this setting.

### *HTTP and HTTPs settings*

Settings if you use HTTPs logins, you may have your HTTP and HTTPs server in different URLs/ports.

## **Wiki settings**

This section was explained in the Wiki section of the manual: Wiki Configuration

## **Image Galleries settings**

Image galleries

Home Gallery (main gallery) Packers 2002 ▼  

[Set prefs](#)

Galleries features  
Rankings: ☒  
Comments: ☒  
Use database to store images: ☐  
Use a directory to store images: ☒ Directory path:   
Uploaded image names must match regex:   
Uploaded image names cannot match regex:   

[Set features](#)

[Remove images in the system gallery not being used in Wiki pages, articles or blog posts](#)

Image galleries comments settings  
Default number of comments per page:   
Comments default ordering:  ▼  

[Change preferences](#)

You can enable/disable rankings, set values for comments and you can select which is the Home gallery, the Home gallery will have the following properties:

- If not selected it will default to the first gallery created
- It's where you go if you click on galleries in the main menu (without expanding the menu)
- It's where you go as the home page if you select the home page to be a gallery (in the general settings)

A link is also provided to remove images in the system gallery (cached images) that are not being used in Wiki pages, blogs or articles (maybe they were used once but the page was then deleted and the image remains in the cache). A useful function for space-saving in the database.

In this panel you can also select where to store images and regular expressions to filter uploads, for more information about where to store images and the use of filters read the same section on the next panel: File galleries

## File Galleries

File galleries

Home Gallery (main gallery)
Primera prueba ▼
Set prefs

Galleries features  
[please read](#)
Rankings: ☒
Comments: ☒
Use database to store files: ☐
Use a directory to store files: ☒ Directory path: 
Uploaded filenames must match regex: 
Uploaded filenames cannot match regex: 
Set features

File galleries comments settings  
Default number of comments per page: 
Comments default ordering:  ▼
Change preferences

This panel is almost identical to the file galleries panel, select the home file gallery, the comment settings for file galleries and if rankings/comments are used or not for file galleries.

There's an important setting for the file galleries: the storage strategy for files. You can choose one of two options to store file gallery files:

- Store file on the database
- Store files on a directory

The differences and settings needed for each option are explained below:

Storing files on the database:

If you decide to store files on the database then each file data will be stored on a database column (field) this has the following advantages and disadvantages:

- \* You don't need to configure anything else.
- \* You may have problems if you plan to store large files
- \* The database can grow a lot making more difficult to make backups/dumps

Uploading large files

If you do want to store files on the database you may have problems uploading files of more than 1MB, this is because MySQL has default packet limit size of 1MB, you need to change the `max_allowed_packet` setting for MySQL find the script that calls `mysqld` (the server) and add the option

`-O max_allowed_packet = 16M`

To support up to 16Mb files (for example). You may need to contact your database administrator in order to do this. If you want to store large files and have problems configuring MySQL you may need to store files on a directory.

### Storing files on a directory

If you decide to store files on a directory you must indicate the path to a directory where you will store files. The directory can be absolute or relative to the Tiki directory for example:

`files/`  
`/www/tiki/files`  
`/home/tiki/files`  
`files/uploads`  
can be configured as directories.

Storing files on a directory has the following advantages and disadvantages

- \* You must configure properly a directory to store files
- \* You can upload files of any size (if you have space)

You must ensure that:

- PHP can read/write to the configured directory
- The users can read or access the contents of that directory

The first requirement needs just some permission management.

For the second requirement you have two options:

- a) Use a directory outside the webserver DocumentRoot (so the users won't be able to list the directory)
- b) Use a directory inside the DocumentRoot (relative to the Tiki dir for example) and prevent listing the directory using a `.htaccess` file or other configuration depending on your webserver.

You may need to ask your ISP/hosting service for an upload strategy and instructions if the ISP/hosting allows uploads (some PHP's have file uploads disabled for unknown reasons, maybe to prevent disk space consuming). Since

Tiki can be configured to store files on the database or a directory if there's a way to handle uploads then Tiki can use it :) choose the strategy that is best for you.

### Filtering file uploads

You can set up filters for filenames so filenames will be checked and maybe rejected depending on their filenames. Filters are regular expressions perl-like without the // delimiters.

Filename must match: A regular expression that must be matched to accept the file example [A-Za-z]\* (filename can only have a-z letters)

Filename must not match: A regular expression that if matched rejects the file, example \.gif (rejects gif images note that the period must be escaped since we are using regular expressions)

If you don't know anything about regular expressions just leave the fields blank and all the files will be accepted.

## CMS settings

CMS settings	
<b>CMS features</b> Rankings: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Comments: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spellchecking: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <div style="text-align: right;"><a href="#">Set features</a></div>	
Maximum number of articles in home: <input type="text" value="10"/> <div style="text-align: right;"><a href="#">Change preferences</a></div>	
<b>Article comments settings</b> Default number of comments per page: <input type="text" value="10"/> Comments default ordering: <input type="text" value="Date"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> <div style="text-align: right;"><a href="#">Change preferences</a></div>	

You can select here if the rankings/comments feature is enabled for articles and submissions and you can also select the maximum number of articles to display in the articles home page.

## Blog settings

Blog settings	
Home Blog (main blog)	<input type="button" value="Set prefs"/>
Blog features Rankings: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Comments: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spellchecking: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="button" value="Set features"/>	
Blog comments settings Default number of comments per page: <input type="text" value="10"/> Comments default ordering: <input type="text" value="Date"/> <input type="button" value="Change preferences"/>	

You can enable/disable rankings/comments and you can select which is the Home gallery, the Home gallery will have the following properties:

- If not selected it will default to the first blog created
- It's where you go if you click on blogs in the main menu (without expanding the menu)
- It's where you go as the home page if you select the home page to be a blog (in the general settings)

## Forums settings

Forums	
Forums settings	
Home Forum (main forum)	<input type="button" value="Set home forum"/>
Rankings: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Ordering for forums in the forum listing: <input type="text" value="Creation Date (desc)"/> <input type="button" value="Change preferences"/>	

From this panel you can control which forum will be used as the Home forum, if rankings will be used or not for the forums and the default ordering for forums in the forum listing.

## Poll settings

You can setup settings for the polls using this panel:

**Poll settings**

Poll comments settings

Comments: ☒

Default number of comments per page:

Comments default ordering:

## FAQ settings

The following panel can be used to setup FAQs

**FAQs settings**

FAQ comments

Comments: ☒

Default number of comments per page:

Comments default ordering:

## Tracker settings

**Trackers**

Use database to store files: ☒

Use a directory to store files: ☐ Path:

Settings for trackers.

## RSS feeds settings

RSS feeds		
Feed	enable/disable	Max number of items
Feed for Articles:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Feed for Weblogs:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Feed for Image Galleries:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Feed for File Galleries:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Feed for the Wiki:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Feed for individual Image Galleries:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Feed for individual File Galleries:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Feed for individual weblogs:	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Feed for forums:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Feed for individual forums:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>
<input type="button" value="Set feeds"/>		

This panel can be used to control the RSS feeds that Tiki generates on-the-fly as they are requested. RSS feeds can be used to syndicate different aspects of your Tiki web site to other web sites. In this panel you can enable/disable feeds and you can control the maximum number of items that will be generated for each feed. The list of available feeds and their meanings is displayed next:

Feed	Description
Articles	This feed lists the last “n” articles in your site.
Weblogs	This feed lists the last “n” posts to weblogs (any weblogs) in your site.
Image galleries	This feed lists the last images uploaded to image galleries (any) in your site
File galleries	This feed lists the last “n” files uploaded to file galleries (any) in your site.
Wiki	This feed lists the last changes to the Wiki.
Individual Image galleries	This feed lists the last uploaded images to a given gallery. (There’s a feed for each gallery)
Individual file galleries	This feed lists the last files uploaded to a given file gallery. (There’s a feed for each file gallery)
Individual weblog	This feed lists the last posts to a given weblog. (There’s a feed for each weblog)
Forums	Lists the last “n” topics to the Forums

	(all the forums)
Individual Forum	List the last “n” topics to a given forum.

## Modules

Modules are the boxes you see in the left and right side bars of the application, modules can be configured to appear on the left or right bar and you can also configure the order in which modules appear. Finally you can create your own modules using HTML content and they will be ready to be placed as regular Tiki modules.

The modules are administered from the module administration screen:

This is Tiki v1.2 -Antares- (c)2002 by Fwazonga Industries.

**Menu**  
home  
chat  
user preferences  
categories  
[-] Wiki [+]  
[-] Image Gals [+]  
[-] CMS [+]  
[-] Blogs [+]  
[-] Forums [+]  
[-] File Galleries [+]  
[-] Admin [+]

### Admin Modules

[assign module] [left modules] [right modules] [edit/create] [clear cache]

#### User Modules

name	title	action
A poll	A poll	delete edit assign

#### Assign module

Module Name: A poll
Position: left
Order: 1
Cache Time(secs): 0
Rows: 10
Groups: Registered, Anonymous

### Assigned Modules

#### Left Modules

name	order	cache	rows	groups	action
------	-------	-------	------	--------	--------

### Login

logged as: admin  
Logout

### Search

Wiki Pages in:

### A poll

Do you like Tiki

☐ No  
☐ Richard Nixon  
☐ Yes

  
Results

The screen is divided in 4 parts:

- User modules
- Assign modules
- Assigned modules
- Create/edit modules

## User modules

User modules are modules where the content can be anything you want. You can use text, you can use HTML code and you can also use “Smarty” templates special instructions, we’ll talk about these advanced options later.

First let’s see how to edit, remove and create user modules. This is the user module listing in the admin modules panel:

name	title	action
A poll	A poll	delete edit assign

This shows a list of user modules and you have the option to edit or delete a module, user modules are created or edited in this same screen at the bottom.

## Assign module

### Assign module

Module Name	A poll ▼
Position	left ▼
Order	1 ▼
Cache Time(secs)	0
Rows	10
Groups	Registered Anonymous
<input type="button" value="assign"/>	

This is where you can assign a module to be displayed on the left or right side bar of the application, you have to select the module name, the position (left or right) and the order, modules will be displayed in an ascending order way so module 1 goes first then 2, etc. If two modules share the same order value they will be displayed in random order but never before a module with a lower number or before a module with a higher order.

Cache Time is the time that the module content can be in the cache (regardelss of this number some modules are never cached), if a module can be cached then it will be refreshed after the indicated time passes. Use 0 if you don’t want modules to be cached.

Rows are the maximum number of rows a module will display if that makes sense to the module, modules displaying rankings or listings will use this number.

Groups is used to select which groups will see the module if it is assigned. Note that if you don't select at list one group no one will be able to see the module. If more than one group is selected then the module will be displayed if the user belongs to ANY of the groups selected.

Note: There's a setting in the main admin panel called 'display modules to all groups always' when this setting is checked modules will be displayed always without examining the user group.

Note: If you enable the option to let users configure modules then when you assign a new module it won't be displayed until you configure it from your user preferences->configure modules screen. Admin is a normal user so he must configure the module too!

## Assigned modules

### Assigned Modules

#### Left Modules

name	order	cache	rows	groups	action
application_menu	1	0			edit up down x

#### Right Modules

name	order	cache	rows	groups	action
login_box	1	0			edit up down x
search_box	2	0	10		edit up down x
A poll	3	0	10		edit up down x

This part of the screen shows currently assigned modules and their order, cache, groups and number of rows. There're two tables, one for the modules at the left bar and other for the modules at the right bar. You can edit (assign) a module, remove it (it will only unassign the module, you can reassigned later) and you can also move the module up or down one position using the up/down links.

## Edit/Create user module

Edit/Create user module	Objects that can be included
Name <input type="text"/> Title <input type="text"/> Data <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 100px; width: 100%;"></div> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <input type="button" value="create/edit"/> </div>	Available polls: <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Do you like Tiki ▼</div> use poll Dynamic content blocks: <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">▼</div> use dynamic content RSS modules: <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">▼</div> use rss module Banner zones: <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">▼</div> use banner zone

This allows the creation of a new user module, you need to indicate the name (used in the select box to assign the module), the title and the data that will be displayed, the data must be HTML (any since you are admin). The right part of this panel can be used to help you include some objects that can be used in user modules, you can include in an user module:

- A poll (it will display the form to vote for the indicated poll) {poll id=n}
- Any poll from the active polls {poll}
- The current value of a dynamic content block {content id=n}
- A random value from a dynamic content block {rcontent id=n}
- An RSS feed {rss id=n}
- A banner {banner zone=foo}

## Including the current date in user modules

The following syntax can be used to display the current server date on a module:

```
{showdate format="d/m/Y h:i"}
```

Where format is any valid format for the PHP "date" function (see the date function on the PHP manual).

## Including dynamic content in user modules

You can include dynamic blocks in a user module using a simple syntax:

```
Today quote: {content id=3}
```

In the example we are including the current version of the dynamic block “3”. You can create/edit and program dynamic blocks using the Dynamic Content System (DCS). Read about the DCS in the DCS section to learn more.

## Including banners in user modules

If you want you can include a banner in a user module, using the following syntax:

```
{banner zone=sidebar}
```

Where zone must be the name of an existing zone in the banners system and there should be at least one banner assigned to the zone (or nothing will be displayed). You can learn more about banners in the banners section.

## Including polls in user modules

You can display the form to vote a poll in a user module using the syntax

```
{poll id=n}
```

If you want Tiki to display the form to vote some (random) poll from all the active polls you can use:

```
{poll}
```

## Displaying a random image from a gallery

You can use the following function to display one random image from an Imagegallery:

```
{gallery id=n}
```

## Including RSS feeds in user modules

You can display the content of an RSS feed from another site in a user module after you created the feed (see using external RSS feeds later on this section), the syntax is:

```
{rss id=n maximum=m}
```

It will display the rss feed with id=n and it will display up to “m” elements from the feed.

## Advanced editing

If you are not familiar with “Smarty” the template engine used by Tiki you should skip this section.

User modules are parsed by the Smarty template engine before being displayed, you may have noticed that dynamic content and banners are included using two special Tiki smarty plugins. So if you know about Smarty template editing you can use any Smarty tag in your user modules. You can do loops, if constructions, includes, etc.

If you want to learn about Smarty visit <http://smarty.php.net> you will find the Smarty documentation there that you can use in order to check out what can you use in your user modules.

## Available System Modules

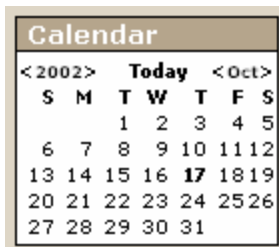
Some modules are already defined by Tiki, this is the list of modules distributed with this version of tiki.

Module	Uses Rows?	Cache?	Description
Application menu	N	N	The application menu (normally you don't want to remove/unassign this module)
Calendar	N	N	A calendar Please see the calendar module below.
Comm received objects	N	Y	A summary of objects received in your site from other sites.
Featured Links	Y	Y	Featured links
Forum best voted topics	Y	Y	The messages with the best scores from the forums
Forums last topics	Y	Y	The last topics in the forums
Forums most commented topics	Y	Y	The topics with most replies in the forums
Forums most read topics	Y	Y	The most read topics
Forums most visited	Y	Y	The most visited forums
Last articles	Y	Y	Last published articles

Last file galleries	Y	Y	Last modified file galleries
Last files	Y	Y	Last uploaded files to file galleries
Last Galleries	Y	Y	Last modified galleries
Last Modified	Y	Y	Last modified pages
Last modified blogs	Y	Y	Last modified weblogs
Last submissions	Y	Y	Last submitted articles (pending of approval)
Logged users	N	N	Number of online users
Login Box	N	N	The login box
Logo Box	N	N	Logo box, shows the tiki logo linking to tiki-index.php
My Pages	N	N	Pages created by the user
MyGalleries	N	N	Galleries created by the user
Number of submissions	N	Y	Number of pending submissions
Old articles	Y	Y	Old articles (articles not displayed in the articles home page)
Search Box	N	N	The search box. NOTE: You can give focus to the search box pressing ALT+s (Windows) or CTRL+s (Mac)
Top active blogs	Y	Y	Most active weblogs
Top articles	Y	Y	Most read articles
Top file galleries	Y	Y	Most visited (accessed) file galleries
Top files	Y	Y	Most downloaded files
Top Galleries	Y	Y	Most accessed galleries
Top Images	Y	Y	Most accessed images from the galleries listing the image name.
Top Images th	Y	Y	Most accessed images from the galleries listing the image thumbnail.
Top Pages	Y	Y	Most accessed pages
Top visited blogs	Y	Y	Top visited weblogs
User blogs	N	N	Blogs created by the user
BreadCrumb	N	N	The last “n” Wiki pages visited by the user, the “n” number is configured from the Wiki section of the admin screen.
QuickEdit	N	N	Displays a box where you can enter the name of a wiki page to create/edit it immediately.
User Bookmarks	N	N	Displays user bookmarks and has the chance to create new bookmarks or folders (please see the user bookmarks section)

Top games	Y	Y	Most played games from the games section
Top quizzes	Y	Y	Most visited quizzes
Last quizzes	Y	Y	Last "n" quizzes
Shout box	Y	N	The last "n" messages in the shout box plus a textarea to enter new messages (if permissions = ok)
Since your last visit	N	Y	Information of new things in the site since the last user visit.
Google search	N	N	A box to search google (results open in a new window)

## Special modules: The calendar module



The calendar module if enabled can be used to control some aspects of the Tiki application. First of all it is a normal calendar that can be navigated changing the month and year and you can always return to the day for today clicking the today link.

When you click on a day the calendar will mark it as the current day for the page you are viewing, if you change the page the calendar will go back to "today".

### How the calendar affects articles

For the articles home only articles with a publishing date lower than the day selected in the calendar will be displayed, this can be used to see the articles home for any previous day. If the date is future and you are admin you can see future versions of the home using to-be-published articles. If you are not admin you won't see future articles.

### How the calendar affects blogs

For the blogs system any weblog will only display posts with dates equal or lower than the date selected in the calendar. If the date is future it is the same as today since we don't have posts with a future publishing date "yet" in the blogs system.

Note that once you select a date in the calendar it won't remain selected if you change the page you are viewing it will be restored to the current date.

## Featured Links

You can access the screen to admin featured links following the “links” link from the admin menu. The featured links screen let's you enter links that will be displayed in the featured links module.

### Featured links

[Generate positions by hits](#)

#### List of featured links

url	title	hits	position	type	action
<a href="http://www.google.com">http://www.google.com</a>	Google	3	1	f	<a href="#">delete</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
<a href="http://www.clarin.com.ar">http://www.clarin.com.ar</a>	Clarín	0	2	n	<a href="#">delete</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
<a href="http://www.php.net">http://www.php.net</a>	PHP.net	0	3	r	<a href="#">delete</a> <a href="#">edit</a>

#### Add Featured Link

URL	<input type="text"/>
Title	<input type="text"/>
Position	<input type="text" value="1"/> (0 disables the link)
Link type	<input type="text" value="framed"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="button" value="add"/>	

In this screen you can enter links, remove or edit existing links and set the position for each link in the featured links modules. Links with position = 0 won't be displayed so you can use that number to temporarily disable a link without removing it from the listing.

You can select the opening type for each link that can be:

- Replace current window (a normal link)
- New window (a normal link opened in a new window)
- Framed (The page will be opened as an iframe inside the Tiki window)

You will also have an option to automatically generate the positions for featured links using the number of hits “visits” that each link has.

## The cache

Whenever Tiki finds a link to an external site in a Wiki page the link is cached in the Tiki cache, this allows the Wiki users to visit the page even if the site is offline or the page is removed or changed.

The “cache” option in the Admin menu lets you administer the Tiki cache:

## Cache

Find

URL	Last updated	Action
http://slashdot.org	12 of November [16:28]	view remove refresh

Page: 1/1

You can list the cached pages, find pages using the find button and for each cache entry you can view it, remove it, or refresh it (will retrieve a fresh copy of the page). If the entry is removed it will no longer display a “cache” link from the Wiki page where the site is referenced.

## Hotwords

Hotwords is a feature that allows the admin to make some words in WikiPages appear as a link. If enabled as a feature hotwords can be administered from the hotwords administration screen:

## Admin Hotwords

### Add Hotword

Word	<input type="text"/>
URL	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Add"/>	

Find

Word	URL	action
PHP	http://www.php.net	remove
Google	http://www.google.com	remove

Using this screen is simple, just add the word-link pairs as needed, remove them if you want, etc. The replacement will be case-insensitive if you add “PHP” you don’t need to add “php” as well. If you have a problem or don’t want this feature just disable it from the main admin screen.

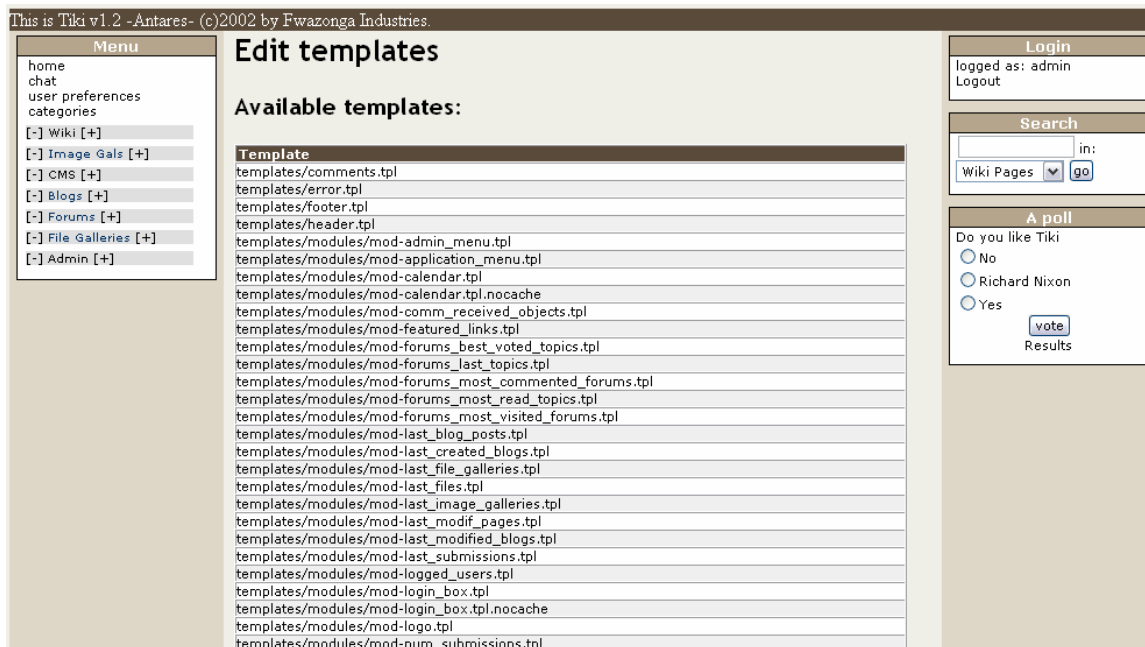
## Edit templates

If enabled from the main admin screen you will see a link to “edit templates” in the admin menu.

If you want Tiki to be able to edit templates you must make sure that PHP can write to the the “templates” directory in the Tiki tree

Editing templates is a very powerful feature but it is dangerous too, if you miss-edit a template you may break the site layout and all your pages will display wrongly. We recommend you to use this feature with extreme caution and don’t give the permission to edit templates to groups of users that are not careful.

The edit templates screen will display a list of templates:



This is Tiki v1.2 -Antares- (c)2002 by Fwazonga Industries.

### Edit templates

**Available templates:**

Template
templates/comments.tpl
templates/error.tpl
templates/footer.tpl
templates/header.tpl
templates/modules/mod-admin_menu.tpl
templates/modules/mod-application_menu.tpl
templates/modules/mod-calendar.tpl
templates/modules/mod-calendar.tpl.nocache
templates/modules/mod-comm_received_objects.tpl
templates/modules/mod-featured_links.tpl
templates/modules/mod-forums_best_voted_topics.tpl
templates/modules/mod-forums_last_topics.tpl
templates/modules/mod-forums_most_commented_forums.tpl
templates/modules/mod-forums_most_read_topics.tpl
templates/modules/mod-forums_most_visited_forums.tpl
templates/modules/mod-last_blog_posts.tpl
templates/modules/mod-last_created_blogs.tpl
templates/modules/mod-last_file_galleries.tpl
templates/modules/mod-last_files.tpl
templates/modules/mod-last_image_galleries.tpl
templates/modules/mod-last_modif_pages.tpl
templates/modules/mod-last_modified_blogs.tpl
templates/modules/mod-last_submissions.tpl
templates/modules/mod-logged_users.tpl
templates/modules/mod-login_box.tpl
templates/modules/mod-login_box.tpl.nocache
templates/modules/mod-logo.tpl
templates/modules/mod-num_submissions.tpl

**Login**  
logged as: admin  
Logout

**Search**  
in:  
Wiki Pages

**A poll**  
Do you like Tiki  
☐ No  
☐ Richard Nixon  
☐ Yes  
  
 Results

You can select any template and edit it:

## Edit templates

### Template listing

```
{if $feature_blogs eq 'y'}
<div class="box">
<div class="box-title">
{tr}Last blog posts{/tr}
</div>
<div class="box-data">
<table width="100%" border="0" cellpadding="0" cellspacing="0">
{section name=ix loop=$modLastBlogPosts}
<tr><td width="5%" class="module" valign="top">
{$smarty.section.ix.index_next}</td><td class="module"><a
class="linkmodule" href="tiki-view_blog.php?blogId={$modLastBlogPosts
[ix].blogId}">{$modLastBlogPosts[ix].blogTitle};
{$modLastBlogPosts
[ix].created|date_format:"%d of %b [%H:%M]}"</td></tr>
{/section}
</table>
</div>
</div>
{/if}
```

Save the template and check the result.

This feature can be used to make very nice changes or effects in your sites, for example you can include a logo at the top of the page editint the tiki.tpl template and you can change the logo on special occassions (as google does) editinh the template.

## Banners

If you have enabled banners from the admin menu you will see a link to admin banners in the admin menu. This will take you to the banner administration screen.

## Banners

### Create banner

Find

find

Id	Client	Zone	Created	Method	Use Dates?	Max Impressions	Impressions	Clicks	Action
No records found									

Page: 1/0

If you have permission to admin banners this screen will show you all the banners in the system with options to edit/remove/view each one. If you are a regular use this screen will display your banners with an option to view the banner stats for each one.

**Note:** There's no link in the main menu to the banner listing, you may want to provide your banner clients with a link to the banner listing screen by email or other method. (May be we should add a link in the main menu if the user is a client and has some active banner in a next version)

Since we won't have any banners initially let's click in the "create banner" link at below "Banners" to create a new banner.

## Creating and editing banners

This is Tiki v1.2 -Antares- (c)2002 by Fwazonga Industries.

**Menu**  
home  
chat  
user preferences  
categories  
[+] Wiki  
[+] Image Gals  
[+] CMS  
[+] Blogs  
[+] Forums  
[+] File Galleries  
[+] Admin

### Edit or create banners

[List banners]

URL to link the banner: 
create zone:

Client:

Max impressions:

Zone:

Show the banner only between these dates:  
From date:     
To date:     
Use dates ☐

Show the banner only in this hours:  
from:    
to:

Show the banner only on:  
Mon: ☒ Tue: ☒ Wed: ☒ Thu: ☒ Fri: ☒ Sat: ☒ Sun: ☒

Select ONE method for the banner  
☒ Use HTML  
HTML code:

**Login**  
logged as: admin  
Logout

**Search**  
 in:  
Wiki Pages

**A poll**  
Do you like Tiki  
☐ No  
☐ Richard Nixon  
☐ Yes  
  
Results

This is the form to create or edit banners, it's quite big so we are going to examine each section in detail to explain how to create different banners:

URL to link the banner:   
Client: 
create zone: 
  
Max impressions:   
Zones:

In the first panel you have to indicate the URL where the banner will link, you have to select a client for the banner and you have to indicate the maximum number of

impressions for the banner and the zone where the banner will be used. If you have no zones you can create a zone using the “create zone” field and button on the right side.

What are zones?

Zones are sections of your site where banners will be displayed, for example we may want to set-up 3 different banners in our site, a normal “480x60” banner at the top of the screen, a text add in a user-module box and some button-like banner at the footer. Since we don’t want a 480x60 banner being displayed in the textadd box we should set-up three different banner zones. You can name zones as you want, if you will only use normal/regular 480x60 banners at the top create a zone with any name and assign all your banners to that zone.

Later when displaying a banner in a Tiki template the syntax will make us indicate which zone will be used in that position.

For example create a zone “textadd” that will be used to put some textadds on the right side bar. After creating the zone you will be able to select the zone in the drop down.

Let’s examine the next panel

Show the banner only between these dates:

From date:

To date:

Use dates ☐

This box can be used to limit the banner lifetime to certain dates, you should enter when the banner will start to be active and when it will stop and check the

use dates checkbox in the panel. If use dates is not checked the banner will be active until it has run out of impressions (using the maximum number of impressions in the previous box). If use dates is active the banner will stop if it runs out of impressions or if the current date is not between the dates in this box. This panel is useful, for example to create a special banner for the holidays or a special date.

Show the banner only in this hours:

from:

to:

In this box you should select the hours when the banner will be active, for example you may want a banner to be displayed only at night or a banner to

be displayed between 3pm and 4pm to announce a sports event.

Show the banner only on:

Mon: ☒ Tue: ☒ Wed: ☒ Thu: ☒ Fri: ☒ Sat: ☒ Sun: ☒

This box can limit the weekdays where the

banner will be displayed. You may have a banner for Fridays, special banners for the weekends, etc.

Select ONE method for the banner

<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Use HTML	<div>HTML code:</div> <div></div>
<input type="radio"/>	Use image	Image: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/>
<input type="radio"/>	Use image generated by URL (the image will be requested at the URL for each impression)	URL: <input type="text"/>
<input type="radio"/>	Use text	<div>Text:</div> <div></div>

And finally here's where you actually indicate the banner. You have four different banner types and you must select only one to create the banner data. The options are:

- HTML banner
- Image banner
- Fixed URL banner
- Text banner

Each option will be explained as follows:

### HTML banners

HTML banners use a snippet of HTML code, this is very common for banner exchange sites where they will send you (show you) a portion of HTML code that you have to display in order to proceed with the banner exchange. Just paste/enter the HTML code in the text area and make sure the radio button is selecting HTML code to use HTML banners.

### Image banner

An image banner is just an image displayed as a banner linking to the URL you indicated. You should upload the image to be used for the banner. Use the upload box to upload the banner and make sure the radio button is pointing at the Use image option.

### Fixed URL banner

A fixed URL banner is a banner that will be retrieved from a URL, this is typical for dynamic "changing" banners, for example <http://bannerserver/mybanner?id=foo> or something like that. For this option you should enter the banner URL, each time the banner is selected to be displayed the content will be retrieved from the URL and displayed.

## Text banner

A text banner is just a snippet of text, this is known as “text adds” which are very common in sites such as Google or Kuro5hin.

For the example enter a couple of textadd banners in the textadd zone.

## Displaying banners

Once you have created your banners you want to display them, you can display a Tiki banner in any Tiki template including user modules system. You have to use the following syntax to include a banner in any template:

```
{banner zone=foo}
```

Where zone is the zone to be used.

In our example let's create a user module from the user modules screen to display our textadds:



**Edit/Create user module**

Name

Title

Data 

```
{banner zone=textadd}
```

Once created assign the banner to some sidebar:

## Assign module

Module Name

Position

Order

Cache Time(secs)

Rows

Groups



Now you should have a user module displaying the text add banners at the right side bar, refresh the screen to see how the banners are rotated (if you created more than one add). You now have textadds in your Tiki site just as Google or Kuro5hin!

## Viewing stats

Once banners are running you or your clients (friends) will want to check how they banners are doing in the Tiki system, from the banner listing you will see a link to "stats".

## Banners

[Create banner](#)

Find		<div><input type="text"/></div> <div>find</div>							
<u>Id</u>	<u>Client</u>	<u>Zone</u>	<u>Created</u>	<u>Method</u>	<u>Use Dates?</u>	<u>Max Impressions</u>	<u>Impressions</u>	<u>Clicks</u>	<u>Action</u>
2	admin	textadd	22 of Oct, 2002	useText	n	1000	3	0	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Remove</a> <a href="#">Stats</a>
1	admin	textadd	22 of Oct, 2002	useText	n	1000	1	1	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Remove</a> <a href="#">Stats</a>

Page 1/1

Clicking on "stats" will display the banner stats:

## Banner Information

Client:	admin
URL:	http://www.cnn.com
Zone:	textadd
Created:	22 of Oct, 2002
Max Impressions:	1000
Impressions:	
Clicks:	
Click ratio:	0.5
Method:	useText
Hours:	From: 00:00 to: 23:59
Weekdays:	mon tue wed thu fri sat sun

The banner information screen displays the statistics for the selected banner.

Future versions of Tiki will enhance the banner systems even more, new constraints will be added to the banner creation form (max impressions per week, restriction by group, etc) and new stats and graphics will be added to the stats page. New versions will be compatible with this version so you can start using the banners right now. Please let us know what would you add to the banners system to make it usable and we'll be happy to include our suggestions in a new version.

## Dynamic Content System

The Dynamic Content System (DCS) is a very easy and flexible tool to display dynamic content in your Tiki sites/applications. This tool is very easy to use but somehow it's difficult to explain exactly what it is ☺.

The DCS lets you administer "blocks" and program "content" for those blocks. Later on you will be able to display any block in any Tiki template or user module.

First of all enable DCS from the main admin screen, you will now see a link to "admin content" at the end of the admin menu. Clicking on that link will take us to the DCS edit screen:

## Creating and editing blocks

## Dynamic content system

### Create or edit content block

[create new block](#)

Description:

save

### Available content blocks

Find	<input type="text"/>	find				
Id	Description	Current version	Next version	Programmed versions	Old versions	Action
No records found						

Page 1/0

In this screen you can see a list of dynamic blocks, to create a block you just need to provide a description, for example create the “quote of the moment” block:

[create new block](#)

Description:

save

Once created you will see the block in the listing:

## Dynamic content system

### Create or edit content block

#### create new block

Description:

Quote of the moment

### Available content blocks

Find	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="find"/>				
<u>Id</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Current version</u>	<u>Next version</u>	<u>Programmed versions</u>	<u>Old versions</u>	<u>Action</u>
2	Quote of the moment		Wed 31 of Dec, 1969 [21:00:01]	0	0	<a href="#">Remove</a> <a href="#">Edit desc</a> <a href="#">Program</a>

Page: 1 / 1

From the listing you can remove the block (all content if present will be removed as well), you can edit the block description (Edit desc) or you can program some content for the block. Let's click on "program" to add some content:

### Creating and editing content for a block

## Program dynamic content for block: 2

Block description: Quote of the moment

### Create or edit content

[\[create new block\]](#) [Return to block listing](#)

Description:

Publishing date: October  2002  at 31

### Available content blocks

Find	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="find"/>	
<u>Id</u>	<u>Publishing Date</u>	<u>Data</u>	<u>Action</u>
No records found			

In this screen you will see a listing of all the programmed content for the block and you will be able to edit a content, create a new one remove content etc. Enter some quote using the default date (will be the current date)

## Program dynamic content for block: 2

Block description: Quote of the moment

### Create or edit content

You are editing block:3

[\[create new block\]](#) [\[Return to block listing\]](#)

Description:

This is my first quote

Publishing date: October 22 2002 at 13 31

### Available content blocks

Find

<u>Id</u>	<u>Publishing Date</u>	<u>Data</u>	<u>Action</u>
3	Tue 22 of Oct, 2002 [13:31:00]	This is my first quote	<a href="#">Remove</a> <a href="#">Edit</a>

Page: 1 / 1

So you have some content for the block “2”. It’s very important to note the block number that you are editing at the top of the page.

## Displaying DCS blocks

You can display dynamic content blocks in any Tiki template or user block using the following syntax:

```
{content id=1}
```

Note: the ids may be different in your installation

Where the id is the id of the block (not the id of the block content!!).

Now let’s see how we can use the content in a user block.

Edit a user module as follows:

### Edit/Create user module

Name	<input type="text" value="Quote"/>
Title	<input type="text" value="Quote"/>
Data	<div>{content id=2}</div>
<input type="button" value="create/edit"/>	

And assign it to the right sidebar.

### Assign module

Module Name	<input type="text" value="Quote"/>
Position	<input type="text" value="right"/>
Order	<input type="text" value="5"/>
Cache Time(secs)	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Rows	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Groups	<div>Registered Anonymous</div>
<input type="button" value="assign"/>	

You wil now see the user module displaying the content you just entered in the DCS!

<b>Login</b>
logged as: admin <a href="#">Logout</a>
<b>Add</b>
This is my first textadd
<b>Search</b>
<input type="text"/> in:
Wiki Pages <input type="button" value="go"/>
<b>Quote</b>
This is my first quote

## Programming content

Now let's program some content for the future, go again to the Admin content screen, Click program for the block with the id=2 (or the id you receive when testing). Click on program and enter some data changing the date for 5 minutes ahead of the current time.

## Program dynamic content for block: 2

Block description: Quote of the moment

### Create or edit content

You are editing block:4

[\[create new block\]](#) [\[Return to block listing\]](#)

Description:

The new quote

Publishing date: October 22 2002 at 13 41

### Available content blocks

Find

<b>ID</b>	<b>Publishing Date</b>	<b>Data</b>	<b>Action</b>
4	Tue 22 of Oct, 2002 [13:41:00]	The new quote	<a href="#">Remove</a> <a href="#">Edit</a>
3	Tue 22 of Oct, 2002 [13:31:00]	This is my first quote	<a href="#">Remove</a> <a href="#">Edit</a>

Page: 1/1

Page: 1 / 1

The listing will show in a dark shadow the “current” content active for the block and in a lighter color the rows for “future” content or “old” content. As you can see we have a block displaying “The new quote” that will be displayed at 13:41. Now just wait until that time and refresh the screen, the user block on the right side bar will change!

**Login**  
 logged as: admin  
[Logout](#)

**Add**  
 This is my first textadd

**Search**  

in:

Wiki Pages
go

**Quote**  
 The new quote

This is how the DCS works, remember that you can display a dynamic block in any Tiki template not just user modules so you can design your site or design new pages for your Tiki-powered site including editable/dynamic/programmable blocks wherever you want.

You can use the DCS for whatever you want, you may want to display news, announcements, special notifications for special dates, sports results, messages to your site users, special offers, promotions, adds, etc.

The DCS system offers a lot of flexibility to your Tiki powered site, use it as you want and enjoy the results.

## ***The Menu Builder***

The menu builder can be used to build menus that can be displayed in user modules, you can enter the menu builder using the “menus” link from the admin section of the application menu.

## Admin Menus

### Create/edit Menus

Name:	<input type="text"/>
Description:	<input type="text"/>
Type:	dynamic collapsed <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

### Menus

Find

ID	name	description	type	options	action
----	------	-------------	------	---------	--------

In this screen you can create menus, remove menus and go to edit the options for an existing menu.

## **Creating and editing menus**

To create a menu enter a name and a description and select the menu type, there're three different types that can be used:

- Static: The menu will be static all the options will be displayed in the menu module.
- Dynamic collapsed: The menu is dynamic only the sections will be displayed in the menu module and there will be +/- links to open/close sections. The application menu in tiki is an example of this class of menu.
- Dynamic expanded: The same as before but all the sections are expanded by default and the user can close with (-) the options that he wants to close.

## Menus

Find

find

ID	name	description	type	options	action
1	Some menu	This is a test	f	0	remove edit options

Page: 1/1

Once a menu is created you can edit the menu options clicking the options link from the menu listing.

## Admin Menu: Some menu

List menus Edit this menu


### Preview menu

Some menu

### Edit menu options Some useful URLs

Name:

URL:

Type:  

Position:

Home Page Home Blog Home Image Gallery Home File Gallery  
 Chat User prefs  
 Wiki Home Last changes Rankings List pages Sandbox  
 List image galleries Upload image Gallery Rankings Browse a  
 gallery  
 Articles home List articles Rankings Submit Submissions  
 List Blogs Rankings Create blog Post  
 File galleries Upload file Rankings  
 Forums View a forum View a thread

### Menu options

Find

ID	position	name	url	type	action
----	----------	------	-----	------	--------

This screen is where you manipulate the options in a menu, at the top a preview of the menu will be displayed, a form to add options/sections to the menu is displayed next, then a list of the sections and options in the menu is displayed. To illustrate how to create menus we created a menu with two sections and two options in each section:

Some menu

Section 1

option 1

option 2

section 2

option 1

option 2

### Edit menu options

Name:

URL:

Type: option ▼

Position:

### Some useful URLs

Home Page Home Blog Home Image Gallery Home File Gallery  
Chat User prefs  
Wiki Home Last changes Rankings List pages Sandbox  
List image galleries Upload image Gallery Rankings Browse a  
gallery  
Articles home List articles Rankings Submit Submissions  
List Blogs Rankings Create blog Post  
File galleries Upload file Rankings  
Forums View a forum View a thread

## Menu options

Find

ID	position	name	url	type	action
1	1	Section 1		s	remove edit
1	2	option 1		o	remove edit
1	2	option 2		o	remove edit
1	3	section 2		s	remove edit
1	3	option 1		o	remove edit
1	4	option 2		o	remove edit

The links at the right of the form to add/edit options can be used to insert common links to Tiki sections if you don't remember the URI for such items.

You can create a menu for whatever you want, to replace the application menu, to have a list of options to your favorite sites, to display a menu of galleries you like, download sections, whatever.

## Including menus in user modules

Menus are displayed using user modules, the syntax to include a menu in a user module is:

```
{menu id=n}
```

## Polls

In Tiki you can create/display and use as many polls as you want, to admin polls use the polls link from the admin section in the application menu.

### Creating/editing polls

## Admin Polls

[Set last poll as current] Close all polls but last| Activate all polls]

### Create/edit Polls

Title:	<input type="text"/>					
Active:	active ▼					
PublishDate:	November ▼	12 ▼	2002 ▼	at	16 ▼	44 ▼
<input type="button" value="Save"/>						

### Menus

Find

ID	title	active	votes	Publish	options	action
1	Do you like Tiki	a	1	Tue 12 of Nov, 2002 [12:36:00]	3	remove edit options

In this screen you can edit/create new polls and remove existing polls, to create a poll you have to indicate the title the type of polls and the publishDate, the type can be:

- Active: The poll can be voted The form to vote can be displayed in a user module using {poll id=n}
- Current: The poll can be voted and can be selected to be shown in a module using {poll} without indicating an id. It can also be displayed using {poll id=n}
- Closed: The poll is closed it won't be displayed and the users can't vote this poll any more. Results can be seen.

The publishDate is used to control when the poll will be enabled, you can program polls for the future if you want. A poll can't be viewed/voted/anything until the current date is greater on equal than then poll publishingDate.

Some special links are also provided:

- “Close all polls but last” will close all polls except the last one.
- “Set last poll as current” will set the last poll as the current poll
- “Activate all polls” will make all polls active

If you click “activate all polls” and “set last poll as current” you will have all polls active and the last one being the current poll.

If you click “close all polls but last” and “set last poll as current” you will have all polls closed and the last one being the current one (only the current poll can be voted in this scheme)

To edit the options in a poll click in the “options” link from the poll listing:

## Preview poll

Do you like Tiki

☐ Yes
 ☐ Richard Nixon
 ☐ No

vote

Results

## Edit or add poll options

Option:

## Poll options

Find

title	votes	action
Yes	0	remove edit
Richard Nixon	1	remove edit
No	0	remove edit

In this screen you will see a preview of the poll, a form to edit/add an option to a poll and the list of options, you can edit options, remove options and add options to a poll as you want.

## Using polls

Once created the form to vote a poll can be displayed using user modules, the syntax to include a poll can be:

```
{poll}
```

This will display a random poll from the list of polls with type = “current” and that have been published.

```
{poll id=n}
```

This can be used to display any active or current poll indicating the id of the poll to displayed.

## ***Using RSS feeds from other sites***

An RSS feed is a summary of news/files/activiy in any website, RSS files are usually used to syndicate news and articles from one site to many, popular RSS files are used to display slashdot news in a site, freshmeat releases, etc.

Tiki can be used to display RSS feeds from other sites in user modules, but first you have to configure the feeds that you want to use. As an admin click the “RSS feeds” link from the admin section of the application menu to admin RSS feeds.

## Admin RSS modules

### Create/edit RSS module

Name:	<input type="text"/>
Description:	<input type="text"/>
URL:	<input type="text"/>
Refresh rate:	15 minutes <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

### Rss channels

Find

ID	name	description	url	Last update	refresh	action
4	Wiki news	My own wiki news	<a href="http://localhost/orion/tiki/tiki-wiki_rss.php">http://localhost/orion/tiki/tiki-wiki_rss.php</a>	Wed 30 of Oct, 2002 [13:05:41]	5 min	remove edit view
3	Freshmeat	Freshmeat	<a href="http://freshmeat.net/backend/fm.rdf">http://freshmeat.net/backend/fm.rdf</a>	Tue 12 of Nov, 2002 [17:04:54]	5 min	remove edit view
1	A module	Slashdot RSS feed	<a href="http://slashdot.org/slashdot.rdf">http://slashdot.org/slashdot.rdf</a>	Tue 12 of Nov, 2002 [16:54:39]	15 min	remove edit view

This screen can be used to configure RSS feeds that can be used in your site, you have to enter a name for the feed, a description, the URL where the RSS feed can be found and the refresh rate. Normally you don't want to refresh the feed each time you display it since that can make the site offering the feed slower so Tiki caches RSS feeds and refreshes the feeds using the interval of time you indicated here.

In this example we have 3 feeds configured:

The wiki news is from our own site, is refreshed each 5 minutes and the URI is [http://localhost/orion/tiki/tiki-wiki\\_rss.php](http://localhost/orion/tiki/tiki-wiki_rss.php)

The Freshmeat feed is refreshed each 5 minutes and the URL is <http://freshmeat.net/backend/fm.rdf>

The slashdot feed is refreshed each 15 minutes and the URI is <http://slashdot.org/slashdot.rdf>

Clicking "view" can be used to see a preview of the feed:

## Content for the feed

- Bind 4 and 8 Vulnerabilities
- Have Fujitsu Harddrives Been Failing in Record Numbers?
- Oracle's GPL Linux Firewire Clustering
- Harry Potter & The Chamber of Secrets Leaked
- Teach Yourself UNIX System Administration In 24 Hours
- Zaurus 5600 Announced
- Mplayer Adds Sorenson v3 To the Linux Roster
- Stanford Researchers Trying to Protect P2P Networks
- Boosting Battery Life For RISC Processors
- PKWare Zips to Growth

You can also see the last time the feed was updated in the list of feeds, unlike other weak RSS systems Tiki won't crunch the cache if it cannot connect to the site when it needs to refresh the site, so if a site goes down Tiki will show the last cached version of the feed without errors or problems to your site.

Feeds can be displayed in user modules using the following syntax:

```
{rss id=n}
```

For example we used {rss id=1} to display the slashdot news in a user module.

Slashdot
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bind 4 and 8 Vulnerabilities</li> <li>• Have Fujitsu Harddrives Been Failing in Record Numbers?</li> <li>• Oracle's GPL Linux Firewire Clustering</li> <li>• Harry Potter &amp; The Chamber of Secrets Leaked</li> <li>• Teach Yourself UNIX System Administration In 24 Hours</li> <li>• Zaurus 5600 Announced</li> <li>• Mplayer Adds Sorenson v3 To the Linux Roster</li> <li>• Stanford Researchers Trying to Protect P2P Networks</li> <li>• Boosting Battery Life For RISC Processors</li> <li>• PKWare Zips to Growth</li> </ul>

Each piece of new is a link to the corresponding article on Slashdot.

## The Chat system

You can admin the chat system clicking the “chat” link from the admin section of the application menu. The chat administration screen is similar to the following one:

### Chat Administration

#### Create/edit channel

Name:	<input type="text"/>
Description:	<input type="text"/>
Active:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Refresh rate:	3 seconds <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

#### Chat channels

Find

name	description	active	refresh	action
General discussion	General discussion	y	3000	remove edit
A chat room	Nothing special	y	3000	remove edit

Page: 1/1


You can create/edit/remove chat channels using this screen, you can also activate/deactivate chat channels if you want. The important item here is the refresh rate, the refresh rate indicates how often will the user browser poll your site for chat messages and it can be different for each channel. A very low refresh rate makes the chat “real-time” since messages appear immediately after a user types the message but will also make a lot of requests to your web server. You have to find the proper refresh rate depending on the performance of your web server and the comodity of your users.

## Categories

From the admin section of the application menu you can see a link to admin categories if you decided to enable categories, the admin categories screen is like the next one:

This is Tiki v1.2 - Azules - (c)2002 by Forazonga Industries.

**Tiki v1.2**



**Menu**

- home
- chat
- user preferences
- categories
- [+] Wiki [+]
- [+] Image Gals [+]
- [+] CMS [+]
- [+] Blogs [+]
- [+] Forums [+]
- [+] File Galleries [+]
- [+] Admin [+]

**Old articles**

**Last galleries**

- 1) Pedvies 2002
- 2) Juan publico
- 3) anon
- 4) fsdf
- 5) Alstgals
- 6) foo
- 7) Juan privada

**My galleries**

11 foo

## Admin categories

Current category: TOP

**Child categories [up|top]**

name	subs	objs	
sadas	2	2	[e x]
pepe	0	3	[e x]
das	0	1	[e x]
dsada	0	1	[e x]
dsdaaaa	0	0	[e x]
asasdas	0	0	[e x]
dsada	0	0	[e x]
La madre de dorrego	0	0	[e x]

**Edit or add category [new]**

Name:

Description:

**Objects in category**

Find

name	type
------	------

**Login**

logged as: admin  
Logout

**Add**

This is some test

**Menu**

- dse
- [+] 32 [+]
- das
- ds
- [+] dadas [+]
- page
- Home Page
- Home Image Gal

**Poll**

A new poll

☐ no

☐ Richard Nixon

☐ yes

Results

**Slashdot**

- Bind 4 and 8 Vulnerabilities
- Have Fujitsu Harddrives Been Failing in Record Numbers?
- Oracle's GPL Linux Firewall Clustering
- Harry Potter & The Chamber of Secrets Listed

There're 4 sections (tables) in this screen that we'll explain:

### The subcategories listing:

## Current category: TOP

**Child categories [up|top]**

name	subs	objs	
sadas	2	2	[e x]
pepe	0	3	[e x]
das	0	1	[e x]
dsada	0	1	[e x]
dsdaaaa	0	0	[e x]
asasdas	0	0	[e x]
dsada	0	0	[e x]
La madre de dorrego	0	0	[e x]

This section shows the current category (where you are) being "TOP" the top category (the only category with no parent). The table shows the list of sub-categories for the current category, for each sub-category the name, number of sub-sub-categories, number of objects in the category and links to edit/remove the category are displayed. The up/top links can be used to go to the parent category (up) or the top category (top).

## Editing or adding sub categories

Edit or add category [new]

Name:

Description:

This section displays a form where you can edit or add a subcategory to the current category, just indicate a name and a description.

## Category objects

Objects in category

Find

name	type	
A new poll	poll	[x]
AnotherPage	wiki_page	[x]
AnotherSuperPage	wiki_page	[x]
Esta es una prueba	article	[x]
HomePage	wiki_page	[x]

Page: 1/3 [\[next\]](#)

This section shows a list of objects in the current category, you can remove the objects that you don't want. Removing an object from a category does not remove the object from Tiki.

## Adding objects to the current category

Add objects to category		
Find	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="filter"/>
page:	<input type="text" value="AnotherPage"/>	<input type="button" value="add"/>
article:	<input type="text" value="asdasd"/>	<input type="button" value="add"/>
blog:	<input type="text" value="a"/>	<input type="button" value="add"/>
image gal:	<input type="text" value="Prueba gal"/>	<input type="button" value="add"/>
file gal:	<input type="text" value="This is a gal"/>	<input type="button" value="add"/>
forum:	<input type="text" value="A forum"/>	<input type="button" value="add"/>
poll:	<input type="text" value="A new poll"/>	<input type="button" value="add"/>

Finally you can add existing Tiki objects to the current category, just select the object from one of the combos and click add, if you have too many objects you may want to filter first the object names using the find filter at the top. As you can see you can categorize the following objects:

- Wiki pages
- Articles
- Weblogs
- Image galleries
- File galleries
- Forums
- Polls

### ***Fortune cookies (AKA taglines)***

Users with permission to admin cookies (taglines) are capable of editing, addign and removing taglines, taglines are just strings that can be displayed using the {cookie} syntax in any template, wiki page, article or comment.

Taglines are managed from this screen:

## Admin cookies

### Create/edit cookies

Cookie:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

### Upload Cookies from textfile

Upload from disk:	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Browse..."/>
<input type="button" value="upload"/>		

## Cookies

Remove all cookies

Find

ID	cookie	action
532	Your weapon was made by the lowest bidder!	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
531	Your ex just called....she's with the IRS now.	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
530	Your boss is thinking about you.	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
529	Your analyst has you confused with another patient	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>

You can add taglines, remove taglines or upload taglines from a text file, the file should contain one tagline per line.

The remove all cookies option can be used if you want to renew your set of cookies using a new text file.

## Backups

If enabled Tiki can be used to create backups of the whole Tiki site, since this has some important consequences we strongly recommend you to read this section before enabling backups.

This is the screen where backups can be administered:

# Backups

## List of available backups

Filename	Created	Size	action
<b>Create new backup</b> <i>Creating backups may take a long time. If the process is not completed you will see a blank screen. If so you need to increment the maximum script execution time from your php.ini file</i> <a href="#">Click here to create a new backup</a>			
<b>Upload a backup</b> Upload backup: <input type="text"/> <a href="#">Browse...</a> <input type="button" value="upload"/>			

As an admin you can create a backup, download an existing backup, restore a backup or upload a backup from your disk. The usual procedure is to create a backup, download the backup and keep it safe.

## Creating backups

To create a backup just click on the create new backup link in the screen, Tiki will create a backup of the whole Tiki database, since this may take a long time you **MUST** ensure that Tiki can complete the operation or the backup will be useless, make sure the maximum execution time is high enough in your php.ini configuration file.

Once created backups are stored in the “backups” directory in Tiki, backups are stored as files and are encrypted with RC4 using the admin password as a key. So:

If you don't protect the backup directory using an .htaccess or similar users will be able to download backups but, the backups will be useless since they are encrypted. The best recommendation is to create a backup, download it and remove it.

## Downloading backups

To download a backup just click on the backup from the listing.

## Uploading backups

You can upload backups using the form provided to upload a backup to Tiki.

## Restoring backups

To restore a backup click the restore link for any backup in the backups directory, the database will be destroyed-recreated and populated with the information in the backup. It's mandatory that the admin password must be the same that was used to create the backup, if you change the admin password of your site make sure that you create a new backup if you are using backups.

## Automating backups

A script called tiki-remote\_backup.php is provided to automate backups of your tiki site using a cron job or similar.

If you want to use automatic backups you can use the following guidelines contributed by Al Brown.

First we need an entry point, eg. a place which can be called from everywhere in order to initiate the backup. This entry point has a **very** simple security mechanism, no valuable data is transferred on the internet from the tiki, it shall only prevent "flood backups". The source to this simple file is attached below. Copy this file into your tiki directory, and **change the password!!!** Don't use your valuable master password, this will be transmitted openly over the net.

Now we need an automated way to call this entry point. If you are familiar with cron, configure it to use GET, with the file given below the call would be

```
GET 'http://localhost/tiki/tiki-remote_backup.php?generate=1&my_word=ThisIsMySecretBackupWord'
```

**It should not work, YOUR password should be different!!**

Well, or use a command line (shell) call to php to execute the script.

Voila, that's it. the backup is running automatically at the intervalls set via cron.

For information about how to configure the cron job via a crontab, consult the man pages for cron and crontab or do a little search on the Internet.

[Maybe somebody is willing to write some additional lines here, I've written enough for today 😊]

BTW a further enhancement would be to download/copy the created file onto another machine for added security. Drawback is that in this case the contents might be available publicly.

Oh, the final note, **did you change the password??** 🤖

OK this is the first time I've ever updated a wiki so hopefully it won't hose everything. :P  
 Anyway,  
 since you asked, here's what a crontab entry would look like to run this every day at 1:25 PM:

```
25 13 * * * GET 'http://localhost/tiki/tiki-remote_backup.php?generate=1&my_word=ThisIsMySecretBackupWord'
```

If the line above winds up wrapping in your browser window, just remember that all that stuff needs to go on ONE LINE. Also, if you are putting this in /etc/crontab you may need to specify the username that the command runs as, like this:

```
25 13 * * * username GET 'http://localhost/tiki/tiki-remote_backup.php?generate=1&my_word=ThisIsMySecretBackupWord'
```

This doesn't apply to all systems, so consult your documentation...which at least on a GNU/Linux system with the right docs installed should be available with "man 5 crontab" (note the 5, just typing "man crontab" will give you the manual for the crontab command rather than the manual for the crontab file format).

An idea for the remote down load of the backup to another system would be to use wget on another schedule.

Just issue a command line call from cron or something simular from the system that will be getting the backup and the file would be automagically downloaded to that system.

wget is available for \*nix and Windows.

Most ISPs will add cron events to their server if you ask them nicely. Especially if they are hosting for you. 🤖

## Content Templates

Content templates are texts that can be applied as templates when creating different tiki options, you can use templates when:

- Editing wiki pages
- Editing articles or submissions
- Editing HTML pages

To edit content templates follow the "content templates" link from the admin section of the application menu. The screen will be as follows:

## Admin templates

### Create/edit templates

name:	<input type="text"/>
use in cms:	<input type="checkbox"/>
use in wiki:	<input type="checkbox"/>
use in HTML pages:	<input type="checkbox"/>
template:	<div><div></div></div>
<div>Preview</div>	
<div>Save</div>	

The process is simple edit the template and save it, you can preview the template if you want.

Important: If editing an HTML page template the wiki syntax is OFF and features such as wiki references and others are not parsed. For HTML pages only HTML code and {ed id=name} or {ted id=name} are allowed and parsed when previewing.

Once a template is created you will be able to apply the template when editing an object for the template type. Note that applying a template replaces ALL the text at the textarea so first apply the template and then fill it in.

## Search stats

The search stats panel shows what the users are searching on your site (if enabled).

### Search stats

[clear stats](#)

Find

term	searched
hey	1
killing	1
phpnuke	1

Page: 1/1

## Referrer stats

The referer stats screen shows the list of referrers to your sites (where users come from)

### referrer stats

[clear stats](#)

Find

term	hits	last
research.salutia.com	2	11 of Dec [18:36]

Page: 1/1

## Email notifications

Email notifications can be used to notify some email addresses when an event occurs in a Tiki site, you have to be admin to edit email notifications.

Enter the email notifications screen following the "email notifications link" from the admin section of the application menu.

## Mail notifications

### Add notification

Event:

A user registers ▼

Email:

[use admin email](#)

add

Find

find

event	object	email	action
article_submitted	*	garland_foster@fibertel.com.ar	<a href="#">remove</a>
user_registers	*	garland_foster@fibertel.com.ar	<a href="#">remove</a>
wiki_page_changes	wikipageHomePage	lrargerich@yahoo.com	<a href="#">remove</a>

Page: 1/1

You can enter as many addresses as you want for a specific event and remove addresses that you don't want to be notified.

Note that to send an email when a wiki page changes you have to configure the email address from the page permissions screen. The email notifications screen is for global events in Tiki not for events related to a individual Tiki object

## Editing mail messages

So you want to customize the mail that tiki sends when some event occurs, you can do this by simply editing a template from the edit-templates screen or using a regular text editor.

Tiki mail messages are stored as templates at templates/mail

You will see how the email is constructed at the template and you can edit the text and the formatting as you need. The whole mail message is 100% configurable.

## The theme control center

If you enable the theme control center you will see a link to “Theme Control” in the admin section of the application menu. The theme control center can be used to assign a theme to:

- A tiki category
- A tiki section
- A tiki individual object

So you can have a gray site with a wiki page displayed in a red background and the articles section in blue and the Sun category in purple!

The theme control center screen is presented as follows:

## Theme Control Center: categories

### Theme is selected as follows:

1. If a theme is assigned to the individual object that theme is used.
2. If not then if a theme is assigned to the object's category that theme is used
3. If not then a theme for the section is used
4. If none of the above was selected the user theme is used
5. Finally if the user didn't select a theme the default theme is used

[Control by Object | Control by Sections]

### Assign themes to categories

Category	Theme	
a	boreal.css	<input type="button" value="assign"/>

### Assigned categories

Find

<input type="button" value="del"/>	category	theme
<input type="checkbox"/>	a	boreal.css

Page: 1/1

1

This screen is used to assign themes to categories there're two similar screens that can be accessed using the links at the top of the page to assign a theme to a tiki section or to an individual tiki object.

It is important to know how a theme will be selected by Tiki, the following policy is applied.

If there's a theme for the individual object being displayed then that theme is used.

If not then if there's a theme for the category where the object belongs then that theme is used

If not then if there's a theme for the current Tiki section that theme will be used

If not then if the user selected a theme that theme is used

If not then the default site theme is used

## Importing pages from PHPWiki or other Tiki systems

The format used to import and export Wiki pages in Tiki is compatible with the PHPWiki system so you can import pages from PHPWiki or from other Tiki systems. A link called “Wiki import dump” can be used to import pages.

### Import pages from a PHPWiki Dump

Path to where the dumped files are (relative to tiki basedir with trailing slash ex: dump/):	<input type="text"/>
Overwrite existing pages if the name is the same:	yes <input type="radio"/> no <input checked="" type="radio"/>
Previously remove existing page versions:	yes <input type="radio"/> no <input checked="" type="radio"/>
<input type="button" value="import"/>	

Page	ver	excerpt	result
------	-----	---------	--------

First of all unzip/uncompress the Tiki or PHPWiki dump somewhere. Then enter the path to the files using an absolute path or a path relative to the Tiki directory, the trailing slash is needed.

The first option is used to know if an imported page can overwrite an existing page, if not then only new pages will be imported.

If overwriting is enabled then imported pages will be added to the page history that means that the old page versions are NOT lost when importing. If you don't want to keep the old page versions set to yes the option to remove the page before importing if the page exist.

Option	Overwrite pages	Remove before
Imported pages will completely replace old pages. The old page versions are lost.	Yes	Yes
Imported pages will overwrite existing pages but the old versions of the page will be kept in the page history	Yes	No
Imported pages cannot overwrite existing pages.	No	No

## Customizing and extending Tiki

## Creating Themes

To create a theme you can define two things:

- The application layout
- The presentation of elements in the layout

To create a new theme proceed as follows:

### ***Layout***

Pick a name for the theme (make sure theres not a theme with the same name)

Create the templates/theme\_name directory.

Copy the files in templates/foo\_theme (some theme) directory to your theme directory.

If you want to modify the layout of Tiki in your theme then edit the files you copied, tiki.tpl is the main template defining the layout of the whole application, error.tpl used to display errors is a tiki.tpl clone and the other templates are used for printable representation of objects so you usually don't want to change them. As you can see you can modify the layout of the whole tiki application just changing ONLY ONE FILE!!! You can add images, define columns, etc etc.

If you don't want to change the layout just copy the files and don't edit them.

### ***Overriding templates***

When creating a theme you can overwrite any template file, you just need to put the modified template in the directory templates/styles/style\_name

Example: if you want to modify the application menu in your theme just create a file called mod-application\_menu.tpl and put it in templates/styles/style\_name/modules/mod-application\_menu.tpl

### ***Presentation***

The presentation of elements is done using a CSS file for the theme, so you have to pick an existing CSS file, copy it with your new theme name and edit it to produce a theme. jalist.css is a theme that you can use to start your new theme. If you want to make a VERY detailed theme use subsilver.css as the model.

Since you can change the CSS file and you can override any template your themes can make your Tiki site look like anything you want. The only limit is your imagination

### ***The default2 theme:***

A discrete theme based on brown tones. It's not very attractive but it is a neutral theme and that's why it is used as default.

The screenshot displays the default2 theme interface. It features a sidebar on the left with navigation links. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'File Galleries' and 'Admin Forums'.

**File Galleries**

Available File Galleries

create new gallery

Find

Name	Description	Created	Last modified	User	Files	Info	Actions
casa	a	03 of Dec (18:16)	05 of Dec (13:50)	admin	3	18	Edit Remove Upload perms
casa	casa	06 of Nov (18:34)	08 of Nov (16:30)	admin	4	5	Edit Remove Upload perms
This is a gal	agal	06 of Nov (18:23)	06 of Nov (19:09)	prueba	1	7	Edit Remove Upload perms
Primera prueba	Esta es la primera prueba de FG lulu	24 of Oct (16:18)	01 of Nov (12:50)	admin	3	13	Edit Remove Upload (perms)

Page: 1/1

**Admin Forums**

Create/edit Forums

Name:

Description:

Prevent flooding: ☐ Minimum time between posts: 2 mins

Topics per page: 20

Moderator: admin

category: [show categories] [hide categories]

Default ordering for topics: Date (desc)

Default ordering for threads: Date (desc)

☐ Send this forum's posts to this email:

☐ Prune unreplyed messages after: 30 days

☐ Prune old messages after: 30 days

Save

### ***The subsilver theme:***

Based on the phpBB excellent subsilver theme

The screenshot displays the subsilver theme interface. It features a sidebar on the left with navigation links. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'File Galleries' and 'Admin Forums'.

**File Galleries**

Available File Galleries

create new gallery

Find

Name	Description	Created	Last modified	User	Files	Info	Actions
casa	a	03 of Dec (18:16)	05 of Dec (13:50)	admin	3	18	Edit Remove Upload perms
casa	casa	06 of Nov (18:34)	08 of Nov (16:30)	admin	4	5	Edit Remove Upload perms
This is a gal	agal	06 of Nov (18:23)	06 of Nov (19:09)	prueba	1	7	Edit Remove Upload perms
Primera prueba	Esta es la primera prueba de FG lulu	24 of Oct (16:18)	01 of Nov (12:50)	admin	3	13	Edit Remove Upload (perms)

Page: 1/1

**Admin Forums**

Create/edit Forums

Name:

Description:

Prevent flooding: ☐ Minimum time between posts: 2 mins

Topics per page: 20

Moderator: admin

category: [show categories] [hide categories]

Default ordering for topics: Date (desc)

Default ordering for threads: Date (desc)

☐ Send this forum's posts to this email:

☐ Prune unreplyed messages after: 30 days

☐ Prune old messages after: 30 days

Save

### ***The Jalist theme:***

Based on the very nice site [www.jalist.com](http://www.jalist.com) it has some gray fades for modules and nice bars for menu titles.

The screenshot displays the Jalist theme interface. It features a sidebar on the left with navigation links. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'File Galleries' and 'Admin Forums'.

**File Galleries**

Available File Galleries

create new gallery

Find

Name	Description	Created	Last modified	User	Files	Info	Actions
casa	a	03 of Dec (18:16)	05 of Dec (13:50)	admin	3	18	Edit Remove Upload perms
casa	casa	06 of Nov (18:34)	08 of Nov (16:30)	admin	4	5	Edit Remove Upload perms
This is a gal	agal	06 of Nov (18:23)	06 of Nov (19:09)	prueba	1	7	Edit Remove Upload perms
Primera prueba	Esta es la primera prueba de FG lulu	24 of Oct (16:18)	01 of Nov (12:50)	admin	3	13	Edit Remove Upload (perms)

Page: 1/1

**Admin Forums**

Create/edit Forums

Name:

Description:

Prevent flooding: ☐ Minimum time between posts: 2 mins

Topics per page: 20

Moderator: admin

category: [show categories] [hide categories]

Default ordering for topics: Date (desc)

Default ordering for threads: Date (desc)

☐ Send this forum's posts to this email:

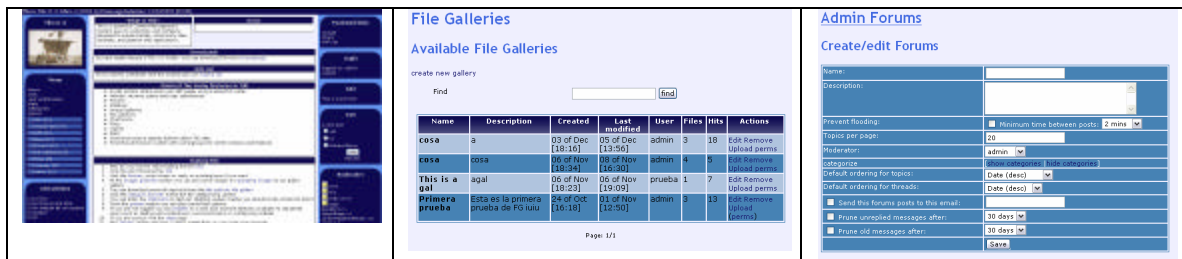
☐ Prune unreplyed messages after: 30 days

☐ Prune old messages after: 30 days

Save

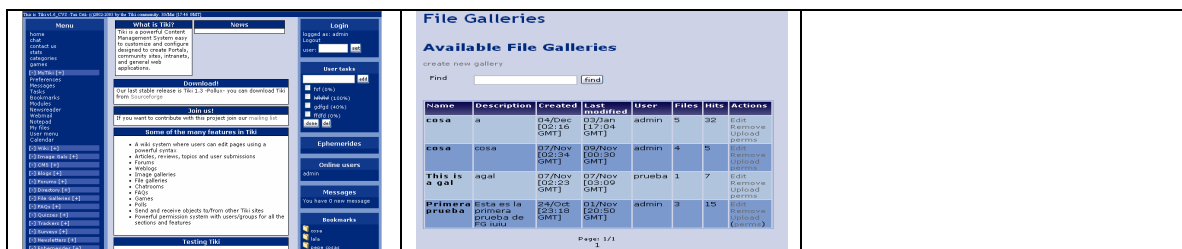
## The dblue theme

A deep blue theme wich you can love or hate



## The elegant theme

Contributed by Fernando Rodriguez.

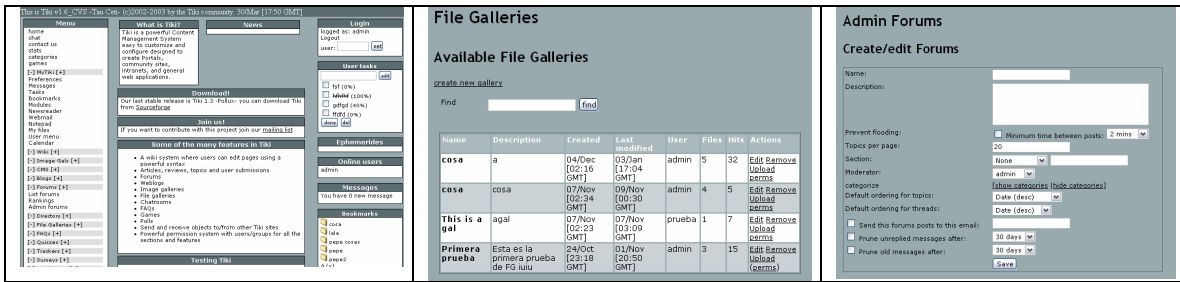


## The boreal theme



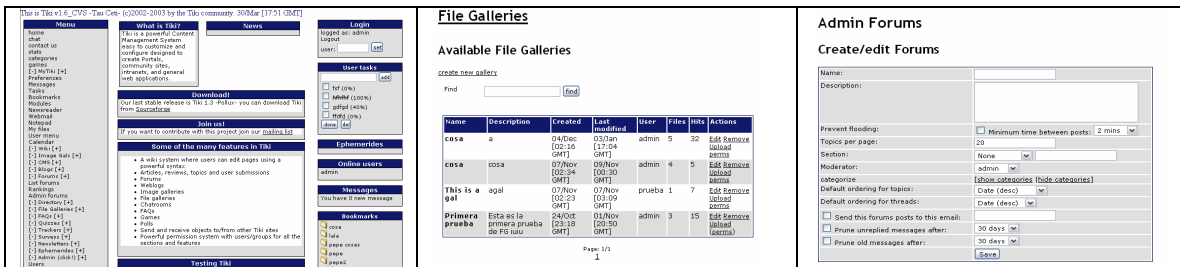
## The whitebluegreen theme

Contributed by Heather Cousineau



## The bluegrey theme

Contributed by Heather Cousineau



## The Codex theme

By Mark Limburg from the Tiki team



If you design a nice theme we can distribute it with the official Tiki distribution and include some screenshots in this manual, just send the CSS file to [lrargerich@yahoo.com](mailto:lrargerich@yahoo.com) and we'll do the rest.

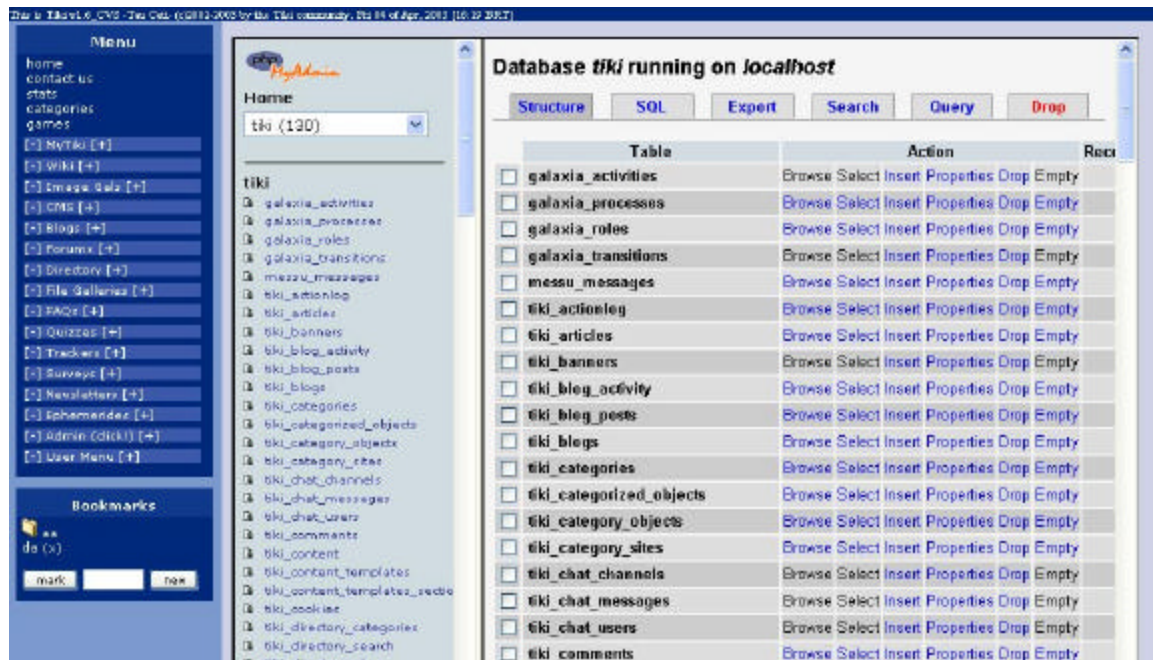
## Integrating other web applications into Tiki

Tiki has a zillion features but sometimes for convenience you may want to use another PHP application from Tiki, for example you may want to use PHPMYAdmin to manage your MySQL databases, phpBB for your forums, etc.

This simple tutorial describes how to effortlessly integrate an application into Tiki.

- 1) Use the featured links feature of tiki to create a link to the external application. Configure this featured link as a “Framed” link. This is crucial.
- 2) Use the link created to access the application, the application will be rendered in a iframe inside tiki and all the links will work.
- 3) Optionally you can disable the right column for featured links only from the admin section->layout options->individual layout per section.

This screenshot shows PHPMYAdmin configured in a Tiki site:



## Customizing the application (Tiki for programmers )

Tiki is an application designed to grow in a neat and usable way, there are several features that allow this application to be easily enhanced and customized by programmers.

- Smarty (the template engine) is used to separate content from presentation, all the logic is in the foo.php files and there's a foo.tpl file that contains the template used to display what the php file generates.
- The whole layout of the application is present in only one file: tiki.tpl (the main template) so you can change the layout as you want by changing just this file
- CSS is used to define the presentation properties of all the elements in the Tiki pages, themes are defined creating new CSS files and putting them in the CSS directory.
- All the database-accessing functions are in library files in the lib directory as classes, the code in PHP files access/changes entities by calling the Tiki API. If you code new pages/modules/whatever please respect this, thanks!
- Tiki is really easy to customize/extend, please give it a chance!

## ***Internationalization and languages***

Tiki supports multiple languages and defines a mechanism to easily make the application available in other languages. In the PHP scripts all the strings must be written as `tra("here goes the string")`; calling the "tra" function that translates the string. In templates you should use the Smarty `{tr}` block, for example `{tr>Hello world{/tr}`. This is how you write string in Tiki to be language-aware.

Once you have modified Tiki the "get\_strings.php" script can be used to scan all the .php and .tpl files in the application regenerating/changing the language files. New strings are added to language files untranslated.

### **Creating a new language (this is easy!)**

1. Create a new directory under the "lang" directory, please name it using a 2 letter convention, example: en=english, sp=spanish.
2. Copy a language file from some other language that you are familiar to this directory.
3. Edit/translate the language.php file.
4. The language is ready to use from Tiki (Tiki will automatically detect the new language)

When testing new languages keep in mind that modules can be cached so they may not change their language unless you clear the cache (in the module administration screen you have an option to clear the cache)

## ***Adding new features to Tiki***

If you want to use Tiki to build your site or your application or if you want to join the Tiki developers community this is what you want to read.

Tiki is an application environment designed to be extensible and customizable, if you know PHP and want to extend Tiki this section will explain how to create new features for Tiki.

### **Basic rules**

Let's start with the basic rules:

Rule 0 (Zeroth): Everybody is welcome to the Tiki developers community, if you need help ask if you want to try try, if you want us to review your work send it.

1. Tiki pages are always compounded by two files: a php file and a template. All the logic and PHP code goes in the PHP file and all the presentation, displaying and layout goes to the template.
2. All the database-access functionality is abstracted into libraries in the lib directory, tikilib is the system library for tiki core modules.
3. PEAR is used in libraries and only in libraries to access the databases, direct DBMS functions such as MySQL API functions are not used.
4. All the strings are written to be easily translated using the "tra" function in PHP or the {tr}/{tr} blocks in templates.
5. All your HTML code must be XHTML 1.0 transitional compatible, use the W3C validator to check your module before releasing it.
6. Put style to your XHTML code using CSS stylesheets.
7. Everything must work with all the warnings and errors reported
8. Everything must work if register\_globals is turned off

### **Tutorial: adding a graffiti wall to Tiki**

Now as a tutorial let's imagine that we want to write a new feature to Tiki called "graffiti wall", the graffiti wall will display the last "n" graffiti (configurable) and will provide users with a simple text area where a graffiti can be entered. HTML code will not be allowed.

### **Planning our module**

We'll need one screen for the graffiti wall:

- tiki-graffitti : Display the last “n” graffittis and provide a form to enter a new graffiti.

The screen will be compounded by:

tiki-graffitti.php : PHP code  
tiki-graffitti.tpl : Template

We'll also add a new library to Tiki called 'graffittilib.php' in the lib directory.

Since we need to store graffittis somewhere we have to create a table to store graffittis, we'll write the .sql creation script in a file called graffiti.sql this will be our table:

```
drop table if exists tiki_graffittis;
create table tiki_graffittis (
 graffitiId integer(12) not null auto_increment,
 data text,
 timestamp integer(14),
 primary key(graffitiId)
);
```

Note: Timestamps and dates are stored in tiki tables as Unix timestamps and are represented as 14 digit long integers. Please use this format to keep the tables consistent.

Execute the .sql script using for example

```
mysql tiki < graffiti.sql
```

## The library

Now we'll write the library that will be used to access the graffittis table, we'll call the library graffittilib.php and it will be a class where we'll encapsulate all the functions that will be used to display graffittis.

This is the library:

```
<?

class GraffittiLib {
 var $db; // The PEAR db object used to access the
 database
```

```

function GraffitiLib($db)
{
 if(!$db) {
 die("Invalid db object passed to UsersLib
constructor");
 }
 $this->db = $db;
}

function sql_error($query, $result)
{
 trigger_error("MYSQL error: ".$result->getMessage().
in query:
".$query."
",E_USER_WARNING);
 die;
}

function add_graffitti($data)
{
 $data = addslashes(strip_tags($data));
 $now = date("U");
 $query = "insert into tiki_graffittis(data,timestamp)
values('$data',$now)";
 $result = $this->db->query($query);
 if(DB::isError($result)) $this->sql_error($query,
$result);
 return true;
}

function get_graffittis($n)
{
 $query = "select * from tiki_graffittis order by
timestamp desc limit 0,$n";
 $result = $this->db->query($query);
 if(DB::isError($result)) $this->sql_error($query,
$result);
 $ret = Array();
 while($res = $result->fetchRow(DB_FETCHMODE_ASSOC)) {
 $ret[] = $res;
 }
 return $ret;
}
}

?>

```

The form in which this class was written should be followed by all the libraries used in Tiki.

The class constructor receives a pear connection object used to access the database through PEAR in the class, we added a method to display SQL errors and two application methods: `add_graffitti($data)` that will be used to add a new graffiti and `get_graffittis($n)` that will return an array with the last “n” graffitiis.

Writing skeletons and putting all together

Now put `graffittilib.php` in the lib directory.

Create `tiki-graffitti.php` in the main tiki directory and write the following skeleton:

```
<?
require_once('tiki-setup.php');
require_once('lib/graffittilib.php');
$glib = new GraffitiLib($dbTiki);
$smarty->assign('mid','tiki-graffitti.tpl');
$smarty->display('tiki.tpl');
?>
```

Let's examine the code, `tiki-setup` is a php file that MUST be included in all the Tiki scripts, in that file permissions and preferences are loaded the database connection is established, the session is checked to determine if the user is logged etc. Don't forget to include it in your Tiki modules.

Then we included our library from the lib directory.

After including the lib we create a `GraffitiLib` object passing the global variable `$dbTiki` that contains the default database connection as indicated in `db/tiki-db.php`.

Finally we set-up the template to use in the middle area of Tiki and we display the template `tiki.tpl`.

Create the skeleton layout `tiki-graffitti.tpl` and put it in the templates directory.

```
<h1>Graffitiis</h1>
```

Just a title since the templates are normal HTML code mixed with Smarty directives.

Now check if everything is ready to be filled in by accessing `tiki-graffiti.php` from a browser:



Wow! The tile is displayed and we are ready to code our Graffiti module.

If you are an experienced PHP developer and know Smarty this is all you need to start coding new features for Tiki, if you need help or have questions you are free to ask, subscribe to [tiki-devel](mailto:tiki-devel@lists.sourceforge.net) the Tiki developers mailing list and start coding. (You can subscribe to the mailing list from the sourceforge page: <http://tikiwiki.sourceforge.net>)

If you want to learn more and learn how to code the Graffiti module just keep reading!

## Coding the graffiti module

Now, we have the skeleton ready to be filled in, we'll start by adding a form to the template to enter new graffitiis.

This is tiki-graffitti.tpl with the form.

```
<h1>Graffittis</h1>
<h3>Write a new graffiti to the wall</h3>
<form method="post" action="tiki-graffitti.php">
 <textarea name="data" rows="5" cols="80"></textarea>
 <input type="submit" name="send" value="{tr}write graffiti{/tr}" />
</form>
```

Very important notes:

- Forms usually are processed by the same script that displayed the template containing the form, in this example tiki-graffitti.php
- XHTML should be used note how the <input> tag ends with ">"

- The {tr}/{tr} smarty block must be used to escape strings that can be translated to different languages.

And this is displayed if you access tiki-graffitti.php

Now we are ready to process the addition of a new graffiti to the wall, let's go to tiki-graffitti.php and add the code to process an addition.

```
<?
require_once('tiki-setup.php');
require_once('lib/graffittilib.php');

$glib = new GraffitiLib($dbTiki);

if(isset($_REQUEST["send"])) {
 $glib->add_graffitti($_REQUEST["data"]);
}

$smarty->assign('mid','tiki-graffitti.tpl');
$smarty->display('tiki.tpl');
?>
```

Note how `$_REQUEST` is used to access submitted variables, this is to make sure that the script will work in PHP installations where `register_globals` is turned off. It's very important to respect this in your Tiki modules.

The code is easy if we are processing a submit button named “send” then call the `add_graffitti` method in our library to add the graffiti.

So now you can add graffiti's but you can't see them!, let's add some code to get the list of graffiti's from the database. Add this before the code that processes the form in tiki-graffitti.php

```
$graffittis = $glib->get_graffittis(10);
$smarty->assign_by_ref('graffittis',$graffittis);
```

This gets the last 10 graffittis from the database and assigns them to a smarty template variable called 'graffittis' now we have to display the graffittis in the template. Edit tiki-graffitti.tpl

```
<h1>Graffittis</h1>
<h3>Write a new graffitti to the wall</h3>
<form method="post" action="tiki-graffitti.php">
 <textarea name="data" rows="5" cols="80"></textarea>
 <input type="submit" name="send" value="{tr}write
graffitti{/tr}" />
</form>
<h3>Last graffittis</h3>
{section name=i loop=$graffittis}
<div class="simplebox">
{$graffittis[i].data}
</div>
{/section}
```

Note how the Smarty {section} directive is used to loop the \$graffittis template variable assigned in the PHP file, for each graffitti we display the data in a div classed 'simplebox' the result is simple:

## Graffittis

**Write a new graffitti to the wall**

write graffitti

**Last graffittis**

tt

nv

daads

daads

Write graffittis and see them appearing at the top, once you reach more than 10 only the last 10 graffittis will be displayed.

## Adding the graffitti module as a tiki feature.

Once you have a successful module doing everything you want you should add it as a Tiki feature allowing the admin to enable/disable the new feature from the Tiki main screen menu.

In order to do this you must edit tiki-admin.tpl and tiki-admin.php, in tiki-admin.tpl add a checkbox with a name proper to your module example: \$feature\_graffittis, you can copy-paste-edit the code for another feature. In tiki-admin.php add the code to process the new checkbox, you can copy the code used to process the checkbox for another feature. Once you did this work you will be able to use something like this in tiki-graffitti.php

```
if($feature_graffittis != 'y') {
 $smarty->assign('msg',tra("This feature is disabled"));
 $smarty->display('error.tpl');
 die;
}
```

Note how the error template is called with an error message, note also the use of the “tra” PHP function to translate the error message string.

There’re many improvements to this module, purging all graffittis, removing graffittis if you are admin, displaying the date along with the graffitti. Etc... Since the module is just an example we’ll leave it as is and you can code more if you want.

This was an introduction to the Tiki development world, we strongly hope you like the application and the way in which new features are coded. If you have complaints, suggestions or want to help just contact us.

## ***Modifying tiki using Smarty filters***

Since Tiki uses the Smarty templating engine to display templates you can use Smarty filters to modify the way in which templates are processed.

A template is displayed following these steps:

A template source (.tpl file) containing HTML markup and smarty syntax is compiled into a .php file

Then the .php file is executed to display the template.

A filter is a PHP function that receives a string and returns another string.

Example

```
function foo($string) {

 return '-'.$string.'-';

}
```

There're three filters that you can use

- Prefilters
- Postfilters
- Outputfilters

### **Prefilters**

Prefilters are executed before templates are compiled, so they receive a string containing a template source and return another string with the modified template source. Prefilters are used to process templates before they are compiled. For example converting your ad-hoc syntax to smarty syntax. In tiki we use a prefilter to translate all the strings between {tr}{/tr} before compiling templates so we only translate strings when templates are compiled and not every time the template is displayed.

### **Postfilters**

Postfilters are used after templates are compiled. So they receive a .php source and return a modified .php source. Postfilters are used to inject php code into compiled templates.

### **Outputfilters**

Output filters are executed just before sending the parsed template to the browser, normally outputfilters receive HTML data and return HTML data, can be used for example to compress HTML pages before sending them to the browser.

### **How to add a filter:**

Write a file called *filtertype.name.php* in the Smarty/plugins directory containing a function named `smarty_filtertype_name`. Example:

File: `prefilter.foo.php`

Function : `smarty_prefilter_foo`

Then you have to activate (register) your filter using the `load_filter` Smarty method in the `setup.php` file.

Find the line:

```
$smarty->load_filter('pre','tr');
```

And add your own filter the `load_filter` syntax is

```
load_filter(String filtertype, String filtername);
```

Where `filtertype` can be 'pre','pos' or 'output'

## Appendix A: FAQ

This appendix lists some very common questions that we received and may be useful to other users, some things that are not very clear in the manual and some tips and tricks.

Q: Is Tiki a Wiki or more?

A: *If you read this manual you may have found the answer to that question ☺*

Q: Can I use Tiki for a commercial site/ application, can I sell Tiki-based products.

A: Yes, yes, yes, yes....

Q: Will tiki be free forever?

A: *Yes it will. Tiki is an open-source product and anybody will always be able to download the last stable version from the Tiki site and anybody will be able to get the last "from the kitchen" version from the public CVS.*

Q: Is it mandatory to display the copyright message? Can I remove it?

A: *Of course you can remove it, you can use Tiki as you want and customize to look like anything you want, if you produce a nice customization then you may deserve your own copyright message!*

Q: Can I use Tiki as a replacement for PHPNuke or PostNuke?

*A: Yes you can but please note that Tiki is still in it's early stages, it's just a baby and may have some bugs and errors that are less likely to appear in a more mature software, however since there're many advtages in Tiki over those systems we do recommend migrating from \*Nuke to Tiki.*

Q: How can I add XXX feature to Tiki ?

*A: If the feature you need is something that maybe useful to many Tiki users the best option is to fill a feature-request form at the SourceForge site, the Tiki team will consider all the requests from users and try to address the request in the next version of Tiki if possible.*

*If the feature you need is just for your personal use read the section about customizing tiki/adding a module to tiki.*

Q: Can I join the development team?

*A: Of course we'd love to see new developers in our team, subscribe to the tikiwiki-devel mailing list at sourceforge and we'll get you started*

Q: How often will you release versions?

*A: Until getting to a super-stable-mature product we'll release versions very often, then we'll try to release new versions as new features are added to Tiki*

Q: What kind of features are planned for next versions?

*A: You can get a good understanding of what's about to come reading the feature requests in SourceForge, we'll try to address our user's feature requests in the next versions so any open FR is likely to appear soon. Besides that requests we have a lot of ideas for future versions that will be announced as we find a good development-plan/strategy for them*

Q: What about postgress? I hate MySQL!

*A: Hating a database is not a good feeling but anyway a Postgress compatible version of Tiki is on the way thanks to Marcin who will lead that subproject.*

Q: What is the relationship between Tiki and astronomy?

*A: None, Tiki versions are named after popular stars. Just that.*

## Appendix B: Installing tiki under safe\_mode

(By Markku Niskanen)

### Installing Tiki without Linux root rights

#### Background

The problem with many PHP applications is that one needs very strong rights to be able to install, configure and finally run them. They may work fine when you install them into your own Linux box but if you install them to a web hotel you may face problems like:

- You have no access to the Apache `httpd.conf` file
- You cannot access PHP files outside your own directory which may be, for instance `/home/customers/acmecorp/`
- Some necessary libraries are installed to `root` owned, inaccessible directories, for instance `/usr/lib/php/`
- With `safe_mode` enabled you cannot create directories from within your PHP application.
- You or your customer will only have access to one MySQL database, for instance `acme_db`, you cannot create more

#### Assumptions for the rest of the discussion

The rest of the document makes some assumptions about the installation directories and the rest of the environment. Please make sure you understand where to install the libraries in *your* environment before even trying to do that.

- The main assumption is that you have SSH or Telnet access to your ISP. Without one you cannot do much.
- The actual company home directory for our example installation is `/home/customers/acmecorp`
- The actual `public_html` directory will thus be `/home/customers/acmecorp/public_html`
- The ISP has turned PHP `safe_mode` on to improve security
- The files from mode directory own are owned by user/group `acme/acme`
- You have access to MySQL database `acme_db` with username/password `acme/acme1234`
- The DNS name of the MySQL server is `mysql.myhost.com` (*not* "localhost").
- The `PEAR` modules are unavailable (you will need `PEAR` and `PEAR::DB`)

## Checking if something is actually wrong

Copy the following lines and save the test application to your `public_html` directory naming it "peartest.php":

```
<?
 require_once("DB.php");
 require_once "PEAR.php" ;
 echo ("<h3>Swoobadoo</h3>");
?>
```

Now test whether you can run the application, pointing your browser to it. If you see the message

**Swoobadoo**

then you will probably not have any problems with PEAR. You can jump directly to the Tiki installation section.

However, if you get warnings about "Safe mode restrictions", you will need to install a local copy of PEAR. Also, if you get a message telling that `DB.php` cannot be found, you will need to install a local copy of PEAR.

## Installing the PEAR stuff locally

I have found two types of Apache installations: With the good one the restrictions are friendly and you can change the PHP include path using `.htaccess` files. With the bad one you must hand-code a few paths but it will work, anyhow.

## What n

**First some basic stuff you need to do whatever installation method you must use. For the sake of simplicity we will install PEAR to directory `php` under our `public_html` directory, the actual path will be**

```
/home/customers/acmecorp/public_html/php
```

**You will need to find the PEAR sources, download them decide where you want to install it.**

**If you find out that the files have *by chance* been installed by the web hotel owner you can copy the directory from the root owned directory, if you are allowed to do so. If not, you can fetch a zipped copy from [here](#) and unzip the package to your `public_html` directory.**

**After unzipping the files make sure that you have the correct ownership for the files. Just to make sure this is the case go to the `public_html` directory and give two commands:**

```
chown acme php --recursive
chgrp acme php --recursive
```

**The above may not be necessary, however but does no harm, either.**

## The easy case

The easiest way to get access to the PEAR classes is use the `.htaccess` file in your application directory.

Add the following line to the `.htaccess` file (if the file does not exist, create it):

```
php_value include_path ./home/customers/acmecorp/public_html/php
```

That's all. Now you can re-run the `peartest.php` page and if it works now you are done with the PEAR installation and can continue with Tiki.

## The handmade way

If the `.htaccess` method did not work you must make a couple of small changes to the PEAR files. There are several ways to do this, here is one of them. Let's start with `DB.php`. Find the following line in the code:

```
require_once "PEAR.php";
```

and replace it with these two lines:

```
$peardir="/hode> $peardir="/home/customers/acmecorp/public_html/php/"
";
require_once $peardir."PEAR.php";
```

Then find all lines that are trying to include the MySQL module:

```
include_once "DB/${type}.php"
```

and replace them with

```
include_once $peardir."DB/${type}.php";
```

Also, add the following line to the beginning of the functions that are affected (at least functions `&connect` and `&factory`);

```
global $peardir;
```

Now you will need to make one more modification. Replace the `require_once` stuff in file `"DB/mysql.php"` as follows:

```
$peardir="/home/customers/acmecorp/public_html/php/" ;
require_once $peardir."DB/common.php";
```

## Testing the PEAR installation

Point your browser once more to `"peartest.php"` and load it. If you see no errors but *can* see the "Swoobadoo" then your installation is succesful.

## The Tiki installation

If you have made things work so far the rest will be a lot easier. So you need to do the following (from the command prompt):

Unzip the Tiki stuff to your `public_html` directory. You should find the directory structure there starting from `tiki/`.

Remember that our problem was the lack of root access to our MySQL and we only have one database available and we *cannot create another*. Therefore we must tell Tiki to use that very database and run a bit more complicated (or accurate) creation script.

Go to your `tiki/db` directory and edit the `tiki-db.php` file as follows:

```
// if you used the handmade way (.htaccess did not work) then
// uncomment the following line and comment the line after it

//require_once('/home/customers/acmecorp/public_html/php/DB.php');
require_once('DB.php');
// Often MySQL is being run in another server, check your
situation!
$host_tiki = 'mysql.myhost.com';
$user_tiki = 'acme';
$pass_tiki = 'acme1234';
$db_tiki = 'acme_db';
```

Now you can run the sql creation script in the same directory. I prefer to do this in the MySQL command prompt:

```
mysql -p -h mysql.myhost.com -d acme_db --user acme
```

Enter your password and when you are in the MySQL command prompt enter

```
source tiki.sql
```

You should now see some 75 messages about the creation of tables but **no** error messages. After the script has finished enter

```
show tables
```

If you see the following table listing you have succeeded in creating the tables and you can quit the command prompt:

```
+-----+
| Tables |
+-----+
| tiki_actionlog |
| tiki_articles |
| tiki_banners |
| tiki_blog_activity |
+-----+
```

```
etc...
```

All right, let's quit:

```
quit
```

## Configuring Smarty `safe_mode` friendly

You will need to edit the `Smarty/Smarty.class.php` file as well. As we are running our stuff in `safe_mode` we cannot create subdirectories and you will need to find the subdirectory creation flag in the file and change it to false:

```
var $use_sub_dirs = false; // use sub dirs for cache and
compiled files?
// sub directories are more efficient, but
// you can set this to false if your PHP environment
etc...
```

After this you should be able to open Tiki using your regular browser. The rest of the stuff can be found in the Tiki manual and will not be covered here.

---

## Address for comments

If you find any errors or want to improve my instructions, please feel free to email me:  
**markku[at]arctive.com**

## Credits

Version 1.6 coding

Flo G

Luis Argerich

Ross Smith II

Damien McKenna

Oliver Hertel

Version 1.5 coding

Luis Argerich

Ross Smith II

Gil Schwartz

Eduardo Polidor

Version 1.4 coding

Luis Argerich  
Evan b  
Ross Smith II

Version 1.3 coding  
Luis Argerich  
Eduardo Polidor

Version 1.2 coding  
Luis Argerich  
Ramiro Vera

Project Managers:  
Eduardo Polidor  
Garland Foster

Internationalization Project chief:  
Gil Shwartz

Images and logos thanks to:  
Janne Pitkänen (2002 Artist of the Year award by Rendercity.com)  
Matthew Pfund  
Mark Limburg  
Heather Cousineau

Language files:  
Spanish: Tadeo Monevin  
French: Marc Laporte / Caroline Morgan  
German: Robert Heitzmann  
Chinese traditional: Chen Jiang-Ding  
Hebrew: Gil Schwarz  
Polish: Marcin Chojnowsky  
Italian: Mario Menne  
Danish: Allan B. Christensen

Demo site hosting:  
Al Brown

Testing and general collaboration:  
Mariana Tome  
Natalia Golmar  
Alejandro Mitrou  
Marc Laporte  
Al Brown  
Damien McKenna  
Tom

Anders Knudsen  
Roger Papillion  
Richard Herb  
Kristian Koenhtopp  
Markku Niskanen  
Mark Limburg  
Oliver Hertel

Many others that should be listed and we forget to list, please accept a sincere apology and remember us to include you.

*If you want to be included in this listing just help us 😊*